

Let's remember

Theme 1: I discover myself (5)

Unit (1) Life in my world

Unit (2) Look around you (14)

Review (1) (57)

(105)

**Non-fiction Reader:
Incredible Places Around the World**

Theme 2: Myself and others

Unit (3) How we use our world (114)

Unit (4) We're on the move (167)

Review (2) (213)

The Story: (219)

Jubari searches for home

Listening Texts (237)

Model Answers (240)

Lesson (1)

LET'S REMEMBER

Body

skeleton	هيكل عظمي
blood	دم
heart	قلب
muscles	عضلات
stomach	معدة

Animals

mammals	ثدييات
reptiles	زواحف
birds	طيور
fish	أسماك
jellyfish	قنديل البحر

Transportation

cab	سيارة أجرة
ferry	معدية
subway	مترو
rocket	صاروخ
ship	سفينة

Technology

website	موقع على الإنترنت
blog	مدونة شخصية
vlog	مدونة فيديو
instant message	رسالة فورية
email	بريد إلكتروني

Food

beans	فول
garlic	ثوم
spices	توابل
herbs	أعشاب
bread	خبز

Clothes

button	زر
sleeve	كُم
linen	كتان
jewelry	مجوهرات
shirt	قميص

Environments

coastal	ساحلية
desert	صحراوية
polar	قطبية
mountainous	جبلية

Environmental Problems

landslide	انهيار التربة
erosion	التعرية
flood	فيضان
tsunami	إعصار تسونامي

Study the following:

- Cairo is the largest city in Egypt.
- You shouldn't eat too many candies.
- Airplanes will use solar energy in the future.
- Today we're talking about recycling.
- We often eat our meals with bread.

Lesson (2)

LET'S REMEMBER

Vocabulary

primary colors	ألوان أولية	presentation	عرض
secondary colors	ألوان ثانوية	congestion	ازدحام
vertebrates	فقاريات	creativity	إبداع
invertebrates	لافقاريات	ice caps	قُطب جليدية
tidal energy	طاقة المد والجزر	amphibians	برمائيات
cold-blooded	ذوات الدم البارد	lantern	فانوس
right hemisphere	النصف الأيمن (للمخ)	citizenship	المواطنة
neighborhood	الحي السكني / المنطقة	Upper Egypt	صعيد مصر
touch-type	يكتب على لوحة المفاتيح باللمس	blind	كفيف
metropolitan areas	المناطق الحضرية	deaf	أصم
densely populated	ذات كثافة سكانية عالية	senet	لعبة السنينيت
sparsely populated	ذات كثافة سكانية منخفضة	topic	موضوع

Read and learn

- 1 Our **skeleton** is made up of all the **bones** in our body.
- 2 There are five types of **vertebrates**: mammals, reptiles, amphibians, fish, and birds.
- 3 Red, yellow, and blue are **primary** colors.
- 4 When you **touch-type**, you can type without looking at the **keyboard**.
- 5 **Congestion** can be a problem in big cities.
- 6 If the **polar ice caps** melt, sea levels will rise.
- 7 **Senet** is the world's oldest board game.
- 8 The **sea** is a good place to get **tidal** energy.

6 Let's remember

Help your child remember these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتذكر هذه الكلمات.

Let's remember

Listen and read.

Tarek : Hi Adam, what are you doing?

Adam : Hi Tarek. I'm doing my homework.
We have to give a **presentation** about
different types of communication.

Tarek : That sounds interesting! What type
are you studying?

Adam : I like reading about lots of different
topics, so I think **blogs** are interesting.

It's great that people can write about their ideas and share
them online.

Tarek : I like **vlogs**. People make some great videos sometimes!

Adam : There are lots of different ways to communicate now. We can
send **messages** more quickly than people could fifty years
ago.

Tarek : Yes, it's much quicker and easier. When do you have to
present your work?

Adam : On Tuesday, but I'm nervous. I don't like talking to lots of
people.

Tarek : Don't worry, you're good at **explaining** things. I can help you
practice. Remember to speak slowly, smile, and try to look
confident!

Adam : Thank you, that's useful advice!



Steps of making a presentation about:

(Neighborhood)

First, we took some photos of the area we live in.

Then, we looked at the photos on our laptop.

Next, we chose the best photos from the
laptop and printed them.

Finally, we made a class display of our work.



Remember

Past Simple Tense

Form

The second form of the verb

Regular verbs

We add (d / ed / ied):

smile → smiled

cook → cooked

study → studied

Irregular verbs

The form changes:

be → was / were

do → did

have → had

Possessive

(Adjectives / Pronouns)

Subject pronouns	Possessive adjectives	Possessive pronouns
I	my	mine ملكي
He	his	his ملكه
She	her	hers ملكها
It	its + noun	-
We	our	ours ملكنا
You	your	yours ملكك - ملككم
They	their	theirs ملكهم

Let's remember

Plural



Nouns can be singular or plural.

Rules for plural

① Regular plural: We add (-s)

brother → brothers sister → sisters

➡ Nouns ending in (o, ch, sh, s, x or z), we add (es).

buffalo → buffaloes

box → boxes

dish → dishes

watch → watches

➡ Nouns ending in (a consonant + y), we remove the (y) and add (ies).

baby → babies

city → cities

➡ Nouns ending in (a vowel + y), we add (s).

donkey → donkeys

boy → boys

② Irregular plural: The noun changes. (There is no rule.)

man → men

woman → women

goose → geese

child → children

person → people

foot → feet

➡ Some nouns don't change.

sheep → sheep

deer → deer

fish → fish

Help your child revise plural forms.

ساعد طفلك أن يراجع أشكال الجمع.

Punctuation Marks



Capital letters

- ① At the beginning of the sentence
- ② Names of people, countries, cities, months and days of the week

 Wael lives in Alexandria in Egypt.



Full stop / Period

- * At the end of the sentence

 I love my school.



Question mark

- * At the end of the question

 Do you like cooking, Mona?



Comma

- * To divide items in a sentence

 I play football, tennis, and basketball.



Exclamation mark

- * To show strong feelings or emotions

 You are doing a great job!

General Activities

1 Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

vlogs - blogs - presentation - homework

- Tarek : What are you doing?
 Adam : I'm doing my ¹⁾ We have to give
 a ²⁾ about different types of communication.
 Tarek : What type are you studying?
 Adam : I like reading about lots of different topics, so I think ³⁾
 are interesting.
 Tarek : I like ⁴⁾ People make some great videos sometimes!

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- Yesterday, we a French lesson.
 a) has b) had c) having d) have
- Last Sunday, I a presentation about reptiles.
 a) makes b) made c) making d) make
- I like People make some great videos sometimes!
 a) blogs b) vlogs c) poems d) books
- "Men" is the plural form of
 a) woman b) man c) child d) person
- Cairo is the city in Egypt.
 a) large b) larger c) largest d) more large
- are cold-blooded.
 a) Reptiles b) Mammals c) Birds d) Cows
- A jellyfish is a/an
 a) invertebrate b) amphibian c) vertebrate d) bird
- People who are can't hear well.
 a) deaf b) blind c) dumb d) lame
- Red and blue are colors.
 a) secondary b) primary c) first d) second

3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. largest - in - the - Egypt - city - is - .
2. solar energy - will - Airplanes - future - the - in - use - .
3. talking - recycling - about - today - .
4. eat - our - often - bread - with - meals - .
5. the moment - doing - are - What - you - at - ?

4 Complete the table.

Singular	Plural	Singular	Plural
baby		tomato	
sheep			geese
	children		cities
man		woman	

5 Punctuate the following.

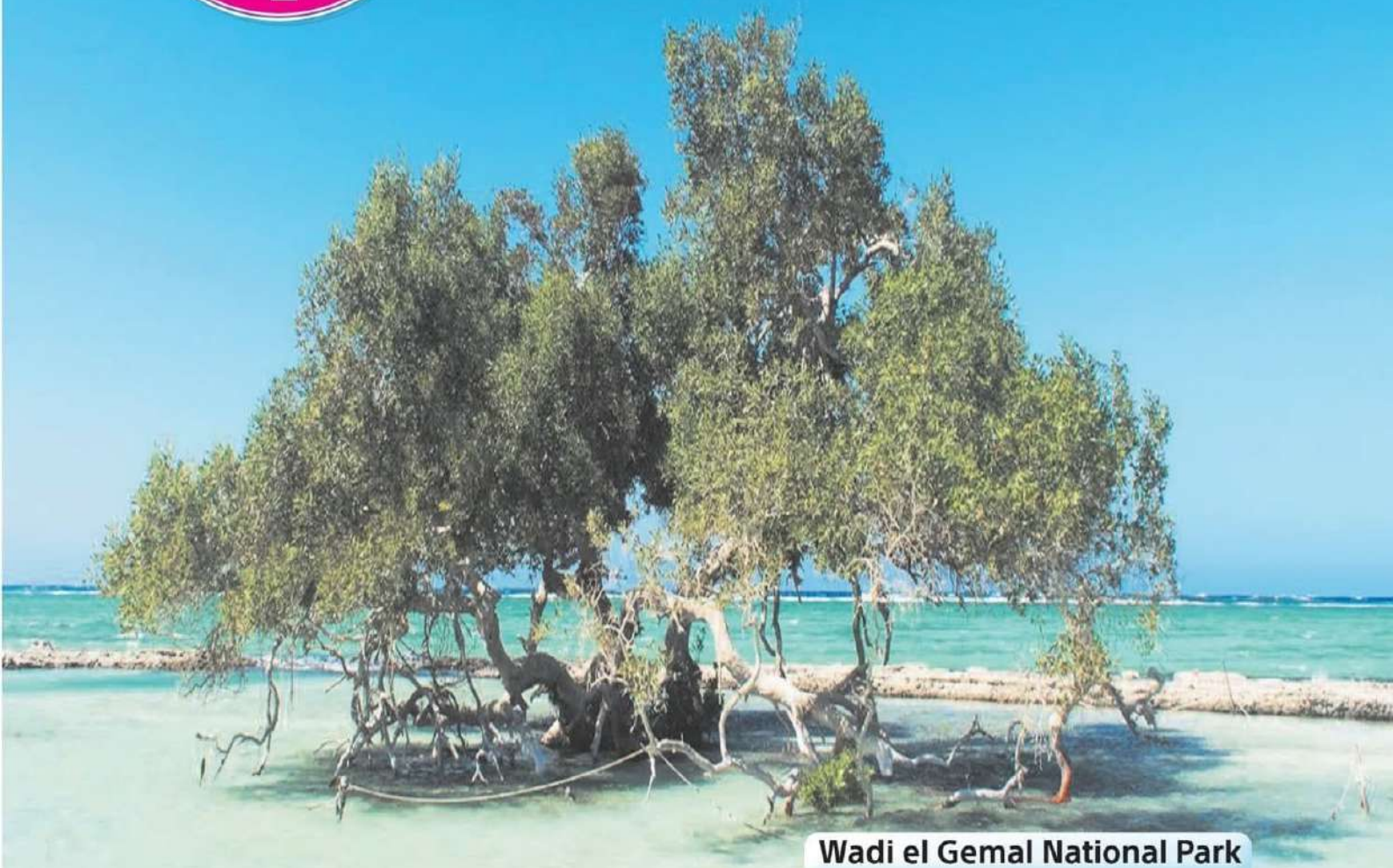
the store sells clothes jewelry and bags

do fares and yasmine live in luxor

will you stay in amman when you visit jordan

Unit 1

Life in my world



Wadi el Gemal National Park

In this unit, the students will ...

- understand a story about a visit to a **marine** ecosystem.
- understand and use **relative clauses**.
- read and understand a story about a **mangrove** ecosystem.
- listen to and understand an interview with a wildlife photographer.
- understand and use **abstract nouns**.
- use **linking words** to write about how to stay healthy.
- read and understand a story about a grassland ecosystem.
- revise and use **will, can, might, must, can't** for predictions, offers, possibility, and obligation.

Lesson (1)

A GREAT TRIP!

Listen and say.



Lesson (1)

Extra vocabulary

storm	عاصفة	trip	رحلة
area	منطقة	South Sinai	جنوب سيناء
thick	سميك	shallow	ضحل (غير عميق)
salt water	مياه مالحة	illnesses	أمراض
diseases	أمراض	community	مجتمع
butterflies	فراشات	mangrove forests	غابات المانجروف
species	أنواع / فصائل	soil	تربة
roots	جذور	carbon dioxide	ثاني أكسيد الكربون

Important expressions and prepositions

along the coast	بامتداد الساحل	interact with	يتفاعل مع
grow out of ...	ينمو من ...	high out of	أعلى من
safe home for	موطن آمن لـ	species of	أنواع من
living things	كائنات حية	Nabq National Park	حديقة نبق الوطنية
non-living things	كائنات غير حية	global warming	الاحتباس الحراري

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present	Past	P.P
arrive يصل	arrived	arrived
protect يحمي	protected	protected
interact يتفاعل	interacted	interacted
survive يبقى على قيد الحياة	survived	survived

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	P.P
fight يقاتل / يحارب / يتشاجر	fought	fought
grow ينمو	grew	grown

Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Listen and read.

Our school trip to Nabq National Park by Heba Osman

رحلتنا المدرسية إلى حديقة نبق الوطنية (هبة عثمان)

Nabq is a very big National Park in South Sinai. Along the coast here, there are 4.8 kilometers of mangrove forest, which is the largest in the Red Sea. We went there to learn why mangrove forests are so important for the marine ecosystem.

نبق هي حديقة وطنية كبيرة جدا في جنوب سيناء. على طول الساحل هنا ، هناك 4.8 كيلومتر من غابات المنجروف، وهي الأكبر في البحر الأحمر. ذهبنا إلى هناك لمعرفة سبب أهمية غابات المنجروف بالنسبة للنظام البيئي البحري.

When we arrived at the beach, we saw trees growing out of the sea! Most trees can't grow in salt water, but mangrove trees can. They have amazing roots which grow high out of the water. These roots help them get oxygen. When I touched the trees leaves, they felt very thick. These special leaves stop the plants losing water when it's very hot.

عندما وصلنا إلى الشاطئ ، رأينا الأشجار تنمو من البحر! لا يمكن أن تنمو معظم الأشجار في المياه المالحة، لكن أشجار المنجروف يمكنها ذلك. حيث لديها جذور مذهلة والتي تنمو عاليا في الماء. تساعد هذه الجذور في الحصول على الأكسجين. عندما لمست أوراق الأشجار ، بدت سميكة جدا. تمنع هذه الأوراق الخاصة النباتات من فقدان الماء عندما يكون الجو حارا جدا.

We learned that mangrove trees help the environment in many ways. Mangrove trees protect the non-living things and the living things in the marine ecosystem.



علمنا أن أشجار المنجروف تساعد البيئة بطرق عديدة. فأشجار المنجروف تحمي الكائنات غير الحية و الكائنات الحية في النظام البيئي البحري.

When there are storms, their deep roots stop the sand washing away. The forests are also a safe home for many animals.

عندما تكون هناك عواصف ، فإن جذورها العميقة تمنع الرمال من الانجراف. الغابات هي أيضا موطن آمن للعديد من الحيوانات.

Hundreds of different kinds of fish, birds, insects, and other animals live in the mangrove forests. We could see many little fish swimming in the shallow water among the roots of the trees, where bigger fish and other animals couldn't catch them. That is how mangrove trees help young fish survive.

تعيش مئات الأنواع المختلفة من الأسماك والطيور والحشرات والحيوانات الأخرى في غابات المنجروف. يمكننا أن نرى العديد من الأسماك الصغيرة تسبح في المياه الضحلة بين جذور الأشجار ، حيث لا تستطيع الأسماك الكبيرة والحيوانات الأخرى صيدها. هذه هي الطريقة التي تساعد بها أشجار المنجروف الأسماك الصغيرة على البقاء.

The leaves of the mangrove trees take four times more carbon dioxide from the air than other kinds of trees. Mangrove trees help us with global warming.

تأخذ أوراق أشجار المنجروف أربعة أضعاف ثاني أكسيد الكربون من الهواء من أنواع أخرى من الأشجار. تساعدنا أشجار المنجروف في حالة الاحتباس الحراري.

We also saw small yellow flowers on the mangrove trees. There were a lot of bees and other insects on them. Bees make a special honey from the mangrove flowers. People say mangrove honey helps fight some illnesses and diseases.



رأينا أيضا الزهور الصفراء الصغيرة على أشجار المنجروف. كان هناك الكثير من النحل والحشرات الأخرى عليها. يصنع النحل عسلاً خاصاً من أزهار المنجروف. يقول الناس يساعد عسل المنجروف في محاربة بعض الأمراض و الأسقام.

What I liked most about the mangroves was seeing all the different species making a community. The plants, animals, and insects all interact with each other to survive. I've never seen so many different species of butterflies! It was a great day.

أكثر ما أعجبني في أشجار المنجروف هو رؤية كل الأنواع المختلفة التي تكوّن مجتمع. تتفاعل النباتات والحيوانات والحشرات مع بعضها البعض للبقاء على قيد الحياة. لم أر قط الكثير من الأنواع المختلفة من الفراشات مثل الذي رأيته! لقد كان يوماً رائعاً.

General Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and answer the questions.

1. Where's Nabq National Park?

.....

2. What kind of forests is there?

.....

3. Why did you go there?

.....

4. What did you see when you arrived at the beach?

.....

2 Read and complete the dialog with the words in the box.

water - marine - fish - trip - Sinai

Ali : Hi Sara. Where did you go yesterday?

Sara : I went on a school 1) to Nabq National Park.

Ali : Where is Nabq National Park?

Sara : It is in South 2)

Ali : Why did you go there?

Sara : To learn why mangrove forests are so important for the 3) ecosystem.

Ali : What are some of the living things in a marine ecosystem?

Sara : Hundreds of different kinds of 4) , birds, insects and other animals.

Lesson (1)

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. The mangrove forest is the in the Red Sea.
a) smallest b) tallest c) shortest d) largest
2. Mangrove trees are so for the marine ecosystem.
a) bad b) awful c) important d) helpless
3. Mangrove leaves are very
a) thin b) thick c) slim d) fat
4. Mangrove trees help young fish to
a) eat b) survive c) swim d) sleep
5. Bees make a special from the mangrove flowers.
a) sugar b) sugarcane c) honey d) milk
6. In an ecosystem, living things with non-living things.
a) go b) watch c) interact d) run
7. Animals and plants are things.
a) living b) non-living c) lively d) lives
8. Mangrove trees are special because they can grow in water.
a) fresh b) salt c) muddy d) cold
9. Mangrove forests the marine ecosystem.
a) kill b) protect c) damage d) destroy
10. The leaves of mangrove trees take more from the air than other trees.
a) carbon dioxide b) oxygen c) nitrogen d) water
11. Mangrove honey helps fight some and diseases.
a) people b) illnesses c) plants d) medicines
12. The plants, animals, and insects with each other to survive.
a) interact b) protect c) damage d) save

4

Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. trees - to survive - Mangrove - fish - young - help - .

المنوفية 2024

2. ecosystem - marine - Mangrove forests - are important - for the - .

البحيرة 2024

3. the sea - Mangrove - grow - trees - can - out of - .

القاهرة 2022

5

Read the following text and answer the questions.

An ecosystem is all the animals and plants in an area. The ecosystem can be as small as a pond or as big as a forest. In an ecosystem, living things such as plants and animals interact with non-living things such as water, rocks, and soil. The different species in an ecosystem make a community, and they all need each other to survive.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The main idea of the text is a/an

a) ecosystem b) lake c) sea d) river

2. The underlined word "big" is the opposite of

a) huge b) large c) small d) heavy

B) Answer the following questions.

3. What is an ecosystem?.....

4. Why do the different species in an ecosystem need each other?

6

Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

The mangrove forests

Guiding elements:

(important - marine ecosystem - salt water - roots - thick)

Lesson (2)

LANGUAGE

Relative Clauses

جمل الوصل

Usage

To describe a noun.

تستخدم لوصف اسم.

who - which - where

who

الذي / التي (للعاقل)

☛ We use "who" for people.

e.g. I have a friend who lives in the Sinai Peninsula.

e.g. We met a man who works in a garden.

which

الذي / التي (لغير العاقل)

☛ We use "which" for things.

e.g. Malak has a book which is about plants in the Sinai Peninsula.

where

حيث (للمكان)

☛ We use "where" for places.

e.g. We learned a lot about the area where they live.

لاحظ:

الفرق بين (اسم المكان والاسم الغير عاقل)

اسم المكان: يعبر عن نشاط نقوم به داخل المكان.

لكن الاسم الغير عاقل: لا يعبر عن نشاط نقوم به داخل المكان.

هنا (الشراء) نشاط نقوم به داخل المحل. This is the shop where I buy my needs.

هنا (فتح المحل) ليس نشاط نقوم به داخل المحل. This is the shop which opens very early.

General Activities

1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. I went to the club I played football. القاهرة 2024
a) which b) who c) what d) where
2. This is the house I live. الجيزة 2024
a) when b) where c) which d) who
3. This is the place it sometimes snows. الشرقية 2024
a) who b) where c) which d) when
4. I have a friend is very good at tennis. الشرقية 2024
a) who b) where c) which d) when
5. A wadi is an ecosystem is normally dry. المنوفية 2024
a) where b) when c) who d) which
6. I have a cousin lives near a wadi. المنوفية 2024
a) what b) where c) which d) who
7. Tennis is the sport I play with my friends. الدقهلية 2024
a) when b) who c) where d) which
8. She's the girl comes first in the competition. الدقهلية 2024
a) who b) where c) which d) when
9. The book I bought was interesting. البحيرة 2024
a) when b) who c) where d) which
10. I met the boy lives next door. البحيرة 2024
a) who b) where c) which d) when
11. This is my teacher teaches us Arabic. دمياط 2024
a) what b) who c) where d) which
12. They live close to a mountain is called Mount Sinai. السويس 2024
a) who b) which c) when d) where

Lesson (2)

13. This is the tablet my father bought last week. **الفيوم 2024**
a) where b) who c) which d) when
14. Lara always gives us figs are from her garden. **المنيا 2024**
a) which b) when c) where d) who
15. We learned about the area we live. **أسيوط 2024**
a) what b) that c) which d) where
16. The doctor is the person helps patients. **سوهاج 2024**
a) where b) who c) which d) whose
17. Do you know the house my grandparents live?
a) that b) who c) where d) which
18. I have a friend is very good at tennis.
a) who b) which c) when d) where
19. This is the house I was born.
a) when b) where c) who d) which
20. I have a sister is very kind.
a) which b) who c) where d) when

2 Read and complete with the correct form.

1. This is my friend (which) I love.
2. We met a boy (where) lives in Cairo.
3. This is the mountain (who) is called Mount Sinai.
4. I have a son (which) is very good at swimming.
5. She has a book (where) is about marine ecosystem.
6. This is the mall..... (who) you can buy many things.
7. Sara is the girl (which) wants to be a doctor.
8. This is the shop (where) opens very early.

Lesson (3)

A RAINFOREST ECOSYSTEM

Key vocabulary



Amazon rainforest canopy

مظلة غابات الأمازون المطيرة



wildlife

الحياة البرية



a custard apple

فاكهة الكاسترد (سفرجل هندي)



photographer

مصور فوتوغرافي



exhibition

معرض

Conjugation of verbs

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	P.P
cut down	يقطع	cut down	cut down
learn	يتعلم	learned / learnt	learned / learnt
show	يبين / يوضح	showed	shown



Main Points

- ❶ Malak Habib has been to the Amazon rainforest.

زارت ملك حبيب غابات الأمازون المطيرة.

- ❷ The Amazon rainforest is a very important ecosystem.

تُعد غابات الأمازون المطيرة نظامًا بيئيًا هامًا جدًا.

- ❸ All the living things in the rainforest need each other.

تحتاج جميع الكائنات الحية في الغابة المطيرة إلى بعضها البعض.

- ❹ Custard apple trees are important to the rainforest ecosystem because animals eat the fruit to survive.

فاكهة الكاسترد الهنديّة مهمة للنظام البيئي لأن الحيوانات تأكل الفاكهة لتظل على قيد الحياة.

- ❺ Birds and animals take the trees seeds to other parts of the forest.

تنقل الطيور والحيوانات بذور الأشجار إلى أجزاء أخرى من الغابة.

- ❻ All the parts of the forest ecosystem interact.

تتفاعل جميع أجزاء النظام البيئي للغابات مع بعضها البعض.

- ❼ People are cutting down the trees, so animals will lose their homes and food.

يقوم الناس بقطع الأشجار، لذلك سوف تفقد الحيوانات مواطنها وطعامها.

Parts of speech

Noun

☞ a word that is the name of a person, place, thing or idea.

✎ Ahmed - Egypt - cat - goal - luck

Adjective

☞ a word that describes a noun.

✎ happy - funny - beautiful - lucky

Adjective	الصفة	Abstract noun	اسم معنوي
beautiful	جميل	beauty	جمال
patient	صبور	patience	صبر
lucky	محظوظ	luck	حظ
successful	ناجح	success	نجاح

Study the following:

- I wanted to show people the **beauty** of the Amazon rainforest.
- You need to have a lot of **patience**.
- **Luck** is also quite important.
- He doesn't want to wait because he isn't a **patient** person.
- They weren't **lucky** that day. They didn't see any wild animals.
- Malak's exhibition was a great **success**.

General Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and answer the questions.

1. What did Malak want to learn about?
.....
2. Why did she want to learn that?
.....
3. What do all the living things need?
.....
4. How do custard apple trees help animals?
.....

2 Read and complete the dialog with the words in the box.

photographer - do - Custard apple - ecosystem - play

Student : Hello, can I ask you a few questions?

Malak : Yes, of course.

Student : What do you 1)?

Malak : I'm a wildlife 2) I like to take photos of the forests.

Student : What's the rainforest?

Malak : It is a very important 3)

Student : What are the most important trees there?

Malak : 4) trees.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Fares doesn't want to wait because he isn't a person.
a) patience b) patient c) success d) beauty
2. People are cutting the trees.
a) in b) on c) down d) at
3. There is so much in the Amazon rainforest.
a) beauty b) beautiful c) success d) successful

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

AI-BAHER - Connect Plus (5) - First Term 25

4. My grandad doesn't have the to learn about computers.
a) patience b) patient c) beauty d) beautiful
5. Malak's exhibition was a great
a) successful b) success c) lucky d) beautiful
6. They weren't that day. They didn't see any wild animals.
a) luck b) lucky c) beauty d) success
7. I wanted to show people the of the Amazon rainforest.
a) success b) beauty c) luck d) patience
8. You need to have a lot of
a) patience b) successful c) lucky d) patient
9. The Amazon rainforest is a very important
a) ecosystem b) river c) desert d) system
10. The animals take the trees to other parts of the forest.
a) stems b) leaves c) roots d) seeds

4

Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. cut down - **People** - the rainforest - trees - in - .
.....
2. important - very - **The Amazon rainforest** - a - is - ecosystem - .
.....
3. many - **Custard** - help - apple - trees - survive - animals - . الفيوم 2024
.....
4. a - is - success - exhibition - **Your** - great - .
.....
5. to - **You** - have - need - patience - a lot of - .
.....

Lesson (3)

5

Read the following text and answer the questions.

Malak is a wildlife photographer. She has been to the Amazon rainforest. She wanted to learn more about the Amazon rainforest, because a lot of people are cutting down the trees.

The Amazon rainforest is a very important ecosystem. All the living things in the rainforest need each other. Custard apple trees help many animals survive. The animals take the trees seeds to other parts of the forest. Malak wanted to show people how all the parts of the forest ecosystem interact.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

كفر الشيخ 2024

1. Malak is a wildlife
a) engineer b) photographer c) researcher d) teacher
2. The main idea of the text is the Amazon
a) River b) rainforest c) company d) animals

B) Answer the following questions.

3. Why did Malak want to learn more about the Amazon rainforest?.....
4. What did Malak want to show people?.....

6

Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

The Amazon rainforest

Guiding elements:

(important - ecosystem - living things - Custard apple trees
- trees seeds - interact)

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Lesson (4)

STORY: IN THE MANGROVE TREE

 **Listen and repeat.**



dugong

الأطوم (حيوان ثديي مائي)



kingfisher

طائر الرفراف



pollen

حبوب اللقاح



worm

دودة

Definitions

worried

You feel unhappy because you're thinking about problems or things that could happen.

قلق

surprised

Something happens and you didn't think it would happen.

مدهش

confused

You find it difficult to understand something.

مشوش / متحير

Conjugation of verbs

Present		Past	P.P
fly	يطير	flew	flown
sit	يجلس	sat	sat
come out	يخرج من	came out	come out
hear	يسمع	heard	heard
bring	يُحضِر	brought	brought

Read and listen to the story.

In the mangrove tree

في شجرة المنجروف

A kingfisher was visiting her old friend, the lizard, in a mangrove tree. She flew down and sat next to the lizard. "You look sad," said the kingfisher to the lizard. "What's the matter?"



كان طائر الرفراف يزور صديقته القديمة، السحلية، في شجرة المنجروف. طار إلى أسفل وجلس بجانب السحلية. وقال طائر الرفراف للسحلية "أنت تبدين حزينة". وسألها "ما الأمر؟".

"People came and cut down some trees. The trees protected the worms and the fish we eat, but now it's difficult to find food." "Oh no!" said the kingfisher, looking worried. "I'm hungry." Suddenly, a dugong came up out of the sea.



قالت السحلية "جاء الناس و قطعوا بعض الأشجار. الأشجار تحمي الديدان والأسماك التي نأكلها ، ولكن الآن من الصعب العثور على الطعام." قال طائر الرفراف "أوه لا!" ، وكان يبدو قلقا. "أنا جائع." فجأة ، خرج حيوان الأطوم من البحر.

"Hello Dugong!" said the lizard, surprised. "Hello Lizard. Hello Kingfisher. I have some bad news," said the dugong. "What is it? Are the people back again?" asked the kingfisher. "Yes, they are. Can't you hear them?" replied the dugong.

قالت السحلية باندعاش "مرحبا، أيها الأطوم!" قال حيوان الأطوم "مرحبا أيتها السحلية. مرحبا طائر الرفراف. لدي بعض الأخبار السيئة"، سألها طائر الرفراف "ما هي هذه الأخبار؟ هل عاد الناس مرة أخرى؟" قال الأطوم "نعم، ألا يمكنك أن تسمعهم؟".

The lizard and the kingfisher listened carefully. They heard trucks and people shouting. "Oh no. How many more mangrove trees are they going to cut down?" cried the lizard.

استمعت كلاً من السحلية والرفراف بعناية. سمعوا الشاحنات والناس يصرخون. بكّت السحلية قائلة "أوه لا. كم عدد أشجار المنجروف التي سيقومون بقطعها؟".

At that moment, the animals heard a buzzing sound. There were three bees buzzing around the tree. One of the bees flew close to the other animals and said, "The people are not going to cut down more trees.



في تلك اللحظة ، سمعت الحيوانات صوت طنين. كان هناك ثلاثة نحلات تَطِنَ حول الشجرة. طارت إحدى النحلات بالقرب من الحيوانات الأخرى وقالت: "لن يقطع الناس المزيد من الأشجار.

They are going to plant other mangrove trees. They understand that they made a mistake. They have learned that the mangrove trees are important, so they're planting new ones. They brought us here to help the trees grow."

سوف يزرعون أشجار المنجروف الأخرى. إنهم يفهمون أنهم ارتكبوا خطأ. لقد تعلموا أن أشجار المنجروف مهمة ، لذا فهم يزرعون أشجارًا جديدة. لقد أحضرونا إلى هنا لمساعدة الأشجار على النمو."

"How will you help the trees grow?" asked the dugong, confused. "We carry pollen from one plant or tree to another and that helps them to make seeds," explained the bee.

سأل الأطوم في حيرة "كيف ستساعدون الأشجار على النمو؟"، أوضحت النحلة قائلة "نحمل حبوب اللقاح من نبات أو شجرة إلى أخرى وهذا يساعدهم على صنع البذور."

"So, is life going to get better here?" asked the kingfisher. "Yes, it is," replied the bee, smiling. "Good!" said the lizard and the kingfisher together. "We're hungry!"

سأل طائر الرفراف "إذا، هل ستسير الحياة بشكل أفضل هنا؟". أجابت النحلة مبتسمة "نعم، ستكون جيدة!" قال السحلية وطائر الرفراف معا. "نحن جائعان!"

General Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and answer the questions.

1. What was the kingfisher visiting?

.....

2. Where did the kingfisher sit?

.....

3. How did the lizard look?

.....

4. Who came to cut down some trees?

.....

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. The trees the animals food.

a) damage b) protect c) destroy d) kill

2. The animals can't find enough to eat.

a) trees b) food c) water d) juice

3. " " is to feel unhappy.

a) Worried b) Surprised c) Hungry d) Funny

4. " " means something happens and you didn't think it would happen.

a) Bored b) Surprised c) Thirsty d) Hungry

5. People came and some trees.

a) turned on b) cut down c) turned off d) flew

6. The kingfisher looked

a) worry b) worries c) worried d) worrying

7. There were three buzzing.

a) birds b) animals c) worms d) bees

3

Read the following text and answer the questions.

The kingfisher visited her friend, the lizard, in a mangrove tree. The lizard was sad. She explained that when the people came to the mangrove forest, they cut down the trees. After that, it was difficult for the lizard to find food to eat. Dugong told his friends the kingfisher and the lizard that the people were back. They could hear trucks and people shouting. The animals were worried. Then they heard some bees buzzing around the tree. A bee told the animals what was happening. The people learned that the trees were important, and that they were part of the ecosystem.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- The animals could trucks and people shouting.
a) listen b) watch c) see d) hear
- The underlined word "She" refers to the
a) kingfisher b) lizard c) dugong d) bee

B) Answer the following questions.

- Where does the lizard live?
- Why was it difficult for the lizard to find food?

4

Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

- says - The dugong - that - are - the people - back - .
.....
- you - the trees - How - help - will - grow - ?
.....
- came - down - trees - some - People - and - cut - .
.....

5

Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

Mangrove trees

الدقهلية 2024

Guiding elements:

(pollen - flowers - bees - plants - carbon dioxide)

Lesson (5)

I HAVE A HEALTHY HEART

Key vocabulary

heart	قلب	blood	دم
arteries	شرايين	circulatory system	الجهاز الدوري
veins	أوردة	carbon dioxide	ثاني أكسيد الكربون

Extra vocabulary

oxygen	أكسجين	new born	حديث الولادة
air	هواء	adult	شخص بالغ (راشد)
humans	البشر	healthy	صحي
sunlight	ضوء الشمس	regularly	بانتظام
minerals	معادن	nutrients	عناصر غذائية

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	P.P
carry	يحمل	carried	carried
move	يتحرك	moved	moved
cycle	يركب دراجة	cycled	cycled
exercise	يتمرن	exercised	exercised
relax	يستريح	relaxed	relaxed

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	P.P
beat	ينبض	beat	beaten
keep	يحافظ على	kept	kept

Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Important expressions and prepositions

similar to	مشابه لـ	move to	ينتقل إلى
think about	يفكر في	good for	مفيد لـ
instead of	بدلاً من	protect from	يحمي من
get sick	يمرض (يصاب بمرض)	How often...?	كم مرة....؟
about 100.000 times	حوالي 100.000 مرة	work harder	يعمل بجهد أكبر

Look and read.

Are plants similar to humans?

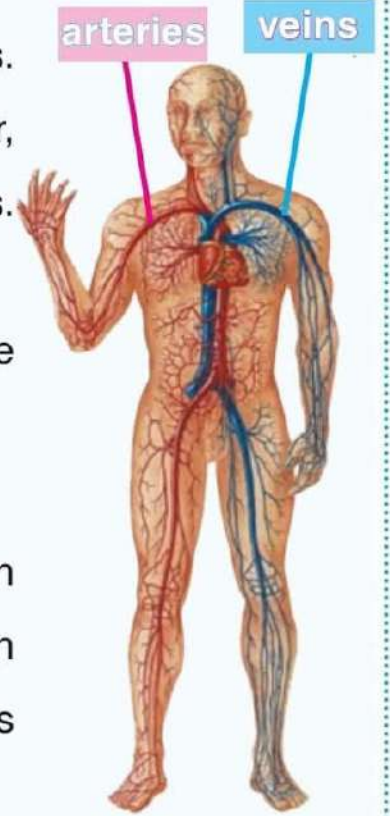
هل النباتات تشبه البشر؟

In some ways, humans are similar to plants.

Think about our **circulatory system**. Instead of water, our veins and arteries carry **blood** around our bodies.

Arteries move blood away from our heart. **Veins** carry blood to it. The nutrients and **oxygen** that we need are in our blood. But we don't use **carbon dioxide** like plants do.

Humans need sunlight, too. We can't make our own food, but we get vitamin D from sunlight. This can help protect us from getting sick. Sunlight also makes a lot of people feel happy!



في بعض النواحي، يشبه البشر النباتات. ففكر في نظام الدورة الدموية لدينا. بدلاً من الماء ، لدينا الأوردة والشرايين التي تحمل الدم في أنحاء أجسادنا. تنقل الشرايين الدم بعيداً من قلوبنا. تحمل الأوردة الدم إليه. المواد الغذائية والأكسجين الذي نحتاجه موجود في دمائنا. لكننا لا نستخدم ثاني أكسيد الكربون كما تفعل النباتات. يحتاج البشر إلى ضوء الشمس، أيضاً لا يمكننا صنع طعامنا ، لكننا نحصل على فيتامين د من أشعة الشمس. هذا يمكن أن يساعد في حمايتنا من المرض. يجعل ضوء الشمس الكثير من الناس يشعرون بالسعادة!

Read and learn.

Your heart **beats** over 100,000 times a day! So it's important to keep your heart healthy. When you walk, run, swim, or cycle, you make your **heart** work harder. If you **exercise** regularly, your heart works better and you can get the minerals, nutrients, and **oxygen** you need more easily.



قلبك يدق أكثر من 100 ألف مرة في اليوم! لذلك من المهم الحفاظ على صحة قلبك. عندما تمشي أو تجري أو تسبح أو تركب الدراجة فهذا يجعل القلب يعمل بجهد أكثر. إذا تدرّبت بانتظام فهذا يجعل قلبك يعمل بشكل أفضل حيث يمكنك الحصول على المعادن والعناصر الغذائية والأكسجين بطريقة أكثر سهولة.

Read this information about the heart

- 1 Your heart beats about 70 times a minute.

ينبض قلبك حوالي 70 مرة في الدقيقة.

- 2 The heart moves blood around your body.

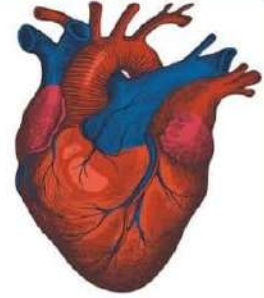
يحرك القلب الدم حول جسمك.

- 3 A new born baby's heart beats faster than adults' heart.

قلب المولود الجديد ينبض أسرع من قلب البالغين.

- 4 Veins carry blood to the heart.

الأوردة تحمل الدم إلى القلب.



HOW TO KEEP YOUR HEART HEALTHY

- 1 Eat healthy food like fruit, vegetables and **fish**.
- 2 Play **sports** with your friends. **Exercise** regularly in the gym or outside.
- 3 Keep moving. Walk, run, **swim**, or ride your **bike**.
- 4 Take some time to **relax** and be quiet.

General Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and answer the questions.

1. What healthy food can we eat?

.....

2. Who do you play sports with?

.....

3. Where can you exercise regularly?

.....

4. How can we keep moving?

.....

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

exercise - oxygen - beats - heart - nose

Your heart 1) over 100,000 times a day! So it's important to keep your heart healthy. When you walk, run, swim, or cycle, you make your 2) work harder. If you 3) regularly, your heart works better and you can get the minerals, nutrients, and 4) you need more easily.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Blood travels around our bodies in our

a) veins and arteries b) muscles c) bones d) tendons

2. move blood away from our heart.

a) Bones b) Ligaments c) Veins d) Arteries

3. carry blood to our heart.

a) Veins b) Fingers c) Arteries d) Toes

4. Blood carries around our bodies.

a) oxygen and nutrients b) carbon dioxide c) nitrogen d) hydrogen

5. We can get vitamin D from

a) water b) sunlight c) soil d) moon

Lesson (5)

4

Read the following text and answer the questions.

In some ways, humans are similar to plants. Think about our circulatory system. Instead of water, our veins and arteries carry blood around our bodies. Arteries move blood away from our heart. Veins carry blood to it. The nutrients and oxygen that we need are in our blood. But we don't use carbon dioxide like plants do.

Humans need sunlight, too. We can't make our own food, but we get vitamin D from sunlight. This can help protect us from getting sick. Sunlight also makes a lot of people feel happy!

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- Our arteries carry away from our heart.
a) food b) water c) blood d) oxygen
- The underlined word "sick" means
a) healthy b) ill c) fine d) nice

B) Answer the following questions.

- What's the main idea of text?
- How does blood move to your heart?

5

Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

- beat - does - often - How - heart - the - ?

القاهرة 2024

- carry - Veins - to - blood - heart - the - .

الإسكندرية 2024

6

Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

How to keep your heart healthy

Guiding elements:

(healthy food - sports - exercise - relax)

Lesson (6)

WRITING: LINKING WORDS

 Read the following text.

Seleem is a healthy boy. He loves sports. He plays tennis, football, **and** basketball. He eats healthy food like fruit, vegetables, **and** rice. He doesn't eat a lot of chocolate **because** he knows that this food isn't very healthy. In the evening, he wants to relax, **so** he reads a book.



سليم ولد بصحة جيدة. يحب الرياضة. يلعب التنس وكرة القدم وكرة السلة. يأكل طعاما صحيا مثل الفاكهة والخضروات والأرز. لا يأكل الكثير من الشوكولاتة لأنه يعلم أن هذا الطعام ليس صحيا جدا. في المساء ، يريد الاسترخاء ، لذلك يقرأ كتابا.

"I do a lot of exercise **because** it's good for me," says Seleem. "Your heart is very important **so** you have to keep it healthy." Seleem is right. It's important to do exercise.

يقول سليم: "أقوم بالكثير من التمارين لأنها جيدة بالنسبة لي". "قلبك مهم جدا لذا عليك أن تحافظ عليه بصحة جيدة." سليم على حق. فمن المهم ممارسة التدريبات الرياضية.

He has a healthy family, too. His sister Amira plays tennis **and** his sister Dina plays football. His mom walks to work **and** his dad rides his bike, **but** they don't play sports. His sisters like to listen to music to relax. It's important for our hearts to relax, too.

لديه عائلة تتمتع بصحة أيضا. أخته أميرة تلعب التنس وشقيقته دينا تلعب كرة القدم. تمشي والدته إلى العمل ويركب والده دراجته ، لكنهم لا يمارسون الرياضة. تحب أخواته الاستماع إلى الموسيقى للاسترخاء. من المهم أن تسترخي قلوبنا أيضا.

Linking words أدوات الربط

Linking words are words that join words or sentences together.

هي أدوات لربط كلمات أو جمل ببعضها.

and و

☞ To link different things in a list

لربط أشياء مختلفة في قائمة

✍ Fish, chicken, **and** beans are all healthy food.

☞ To link two similar sentences

لربط جملتين متشابهتين

✍ We went to the beach **and** we swam in the sea.

but لكن

☞ To show a contrast

لبيان التناقض

✍ He is weak, **but** works for 8 hours a day.

☞ To link a positive and a negative sentence

لربط جملة مثبتة وجملة منفية

✍ He is rich, **but** he doesn't help the poor.

because لأن

☞ To show a reason for something

لبيان السبب

✍ Nadine goes to the pool **because** she likes swimming.

so لذلك

☞ To show the result of something

لبيان النتيجة

✍ Lara wants to keep her heart healthy, **so** she does exercise.

General Activities

1

Read and complete the dialog with the words in the box.

volleyball - and - sports center - Fridays - but

Ali : Hello, Seleem. Where are you going?

Seleem : I'm going to the 1) because it's basketball club today.

Ali : Is there a 2) club at the sports center?

Seleem : Yes. It's on 3)

Ali : Is there a tennis club?

Seleem : No, there isn't. I play volleyball 4) football.

2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. I don't play basketball, I play football. القاهرة 2024

a) so b) but c) and d) because

2. I can't sleep well I have a headache. الجيزة 2024

a) but b) because c) so d) why

3. I'm ill, I am going to see a doctor. القليوبية 2024

a) because b) but c) so d) as

4. They play football, basketball tennis. الشرقية 2024

a) and b) but c) so d) because

5. Hany likes basketball, he doesn't like football. الشرقية 2024

a) because b) and c) but d) so

6. He walks to work plays sports. المنوفية 2024

a) and b) but c) so d) because

7. You must wear a coat it is cold today. الغربية 2024

a) because b) so c) but d) and

8. I like tea, I don't like coffee. البحيرة 2024

a) and b) but c) because d) so

Lesson (6)

9. Lamar eats fruits, it's healthy. **كفر الشيخ 2024**
a) and b) so c) but d) because
10. Soha goes to the pool she loves to swim. **الفيوم 2024**
a) and b) but c) because d) so
11. I passed the exam I studied hard. **أسيوط 2024**
a) because b) and c) so d) but
12. I don't play tennis, I play volleyball.
a) and b) but c) because d) so
13. Lara plays tennis she wants to be healthy.
a) but b) so c) and d) because

3 Read and complete with the correct form.

1. Tarek plays football (and) he doesn't play basketball.
2. We eat a lot of fruit (so) it is healthy.
3. Naglaa goes to the sports center (and) she doesn't go to the gym.
4. We eat fish (but) we eat fresh vegetables, too.
5. I want to be healthy (because) I don't eat candy and cakes.

4 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

الشرقية 2024

How to stay healthy

Guiding elements:

(healthy food - sports - exercise - fruit - walk - drink - sleep)

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Lesson (7)

STORY: WAITING FOR THE RAIN

Vocabulary

rain	مطر	cub	شبل	sunshine	أشعة الشمس
lovely	جميل	warm	دافئ	hard	صلب / قاسي
hunger	جوع	dead	ميت	happily	بسعادة

Important expressions and prepositions

hot day	يوم حار	rain falling	يتساقط المطر
lay in	يستلقي في (يتمدد في)	start to	يبدأ أن
move to	ينتقل إلى	wake up	يستيقظ
run away	يجري بعيداً	move through	يتحرك (خلال / عبر)

Modal verbs

will

For prediction

للتنبؤ

We **will** be hungry.

can

For request and permission

لطلب والاستئذان

Can we catch a rabbit to eat?

might

For possibilities

للإحتمالات

Some rabbits **might** be dead.

can't

For impossibility and disability

للاستحالة وعدم القدرة

Without rain, the grass **can't** grow.

must

For obligation

للإلزام

We **must** wait for rain.

Listen to and read the story.

Waiting for the rain في انتظار المطر



It was another long, hot day in the grassland.
Cub was with his mother, and he lay in the sunshine.
But his mother looked worried.

كان يوماً آخر طويلاً وحاراً في الأراضي العشبية. كان الشبل مع أمه، وكان يرقد في ضوء الشمس. لكن والدته بدت قلقة.

"I hope it rains soon," she said. "Why do you want it to rain?" asked Cub.
"It's lovely and warm. We **can** play in the sunshine." "If it doesn't rain, the grass won't grow. Then we **will** be hungry," she answered. Cub started to laugh.
"What do you mean? We eat meat, not grass!"

قالت: "أمل أن تمطر قريباً". سأل الشبل "لماذا تريد أن تمطر؟". "إنه يوم جميل ودافئ. يمكننا اللعب تحت أشعة الشمس. أجابت الأم "إذا لم تمطر، فلن ينمو العشب. ثم سنكون جائعين". بدأ الشبل يضحك. "ماذا تقصدي؟ نحن نأكل اللحم وليس العشب!"

He ran away to play with his brothers and sisters, but his mother looked at the sky and worried. Two weeks later, it was still hot, and the ground was hard. There was no rain, and the plants were brown. Now, Cub had a strange feeling in his stomach: **hunger**. "**Can** we catch a rabbit to eat?" he asked his mother.
"I **can't** find any rabbits," she said sadly.

جرى الشبل بعيداً للعب مع إخوته وأخواته، لكن والدته نظرت إلى السماء وقلقت. بعد أسبوعين، كان الجو لا يزال حاراً، وكانت الأرض صلبة. لم يكن هناك مطر، وكانت النباتات بنية. الآن، كان لدى الشبل شعور غريب في معدته: إنه الجوع. سأل والدته "هل يمكننا اصطياد أرنب لتناول الطعام؟" قالت بحزن "لا يمكنني العثور على أي أرانب".

"Some rabbits have gone to other places. Some rabbits **might** be dead."
"Why?" asked Cub. "Because there isn't any rain. Without rain, the grass **can't** grow. If the grass doesn't grow, the rabbits don't have any food." "Then we don't have any food!" answered Cub. Now he understood.

"ذهبت بعض الأرانب إلى أماكن أخرى. قد تكون بعض الأرانب ميتة." سأل الشبل "لماذا؟". "لأنه لا يوجد أي مطر. بدون المطر، لا يمكن للعشب أن ينمو. إذا لم ينمو العشب، فلن يكون للأرانب أي طعام. أجاب الشبل "إذا ليس لدينا أي طعام!". الآن فهم الشبل.

"What can we do?" "We **must** wait for rain. If it doesn't rain, we **must** move to a different place." "So let's go! We **can't** stay here without food!" said Cub, who was very worried now.

"ماذا يمكننا أن نفعل؟" "يجب أن ننتظر المطر. إذا لم تمطر، يجب أن ننتقل إلى مكان مختلف." قال الشبل الذي كان قلقاً للغاية الآن. "لذلك هيا نرحل! لا يمكننا البقاء هنا بدون طعام!"

His mother smelled the air. She saw a thin gray cloud start to move through the blue sky. "Let's wait one more day," she said. Cub went to bed hungry, but in the morning, he woke up to hear rain falling on the ground.

كانت والدته تشم رائحة الهواء. رأت سحابة رمادية رقيقة تبدأ في التحرك عبر السماء الزرقاء. قالت: "دعونا ننتظر يوماً آخر." ذهب الشبل إلى الفراش جائعاً، ولكن في الصباح، استيقظ لسماع المطر يسقط على الأرض.

He ran outside with his brothers and sisters, and they played in the cool water. Mother lion smiled. "Do you like the rain now, Cub?" she asked. "Yes, I do! Now the grass will grow, the rabbits will come back, and we won't be hungry anymore!" said Cub, happily.

ركض في الخارج مع إخوته وأخواته، ولعبوا في الماء البارد. ابتسمت الأم وقالت. "هل تحب المطر الآن، أيها الشبل؟" قال الشبل بسعادة. "نعم! الآن العشب سوف ينمو، والأرانب ستعود، لن نجوع بعد الآن!"



General Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and answer the questions.

1. What did the cub wait for?

.....

2. Who did the cub run with?

.....

3. What did his mother look at?

.....

4. Why was the cub very hungry?

.....

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. She study for the exam. القاهرة 2024

a) have b) mustn't c) haven't d) must

2. My mum make us a nice cake. I'm not sure. الإسكندرية 2024

a) is b) must c) might d) do

3. The cub sleep because he is hungry. المنوفية 2024

a) can b) can't c) are d) must

4. Can we a rabbit to eat? الغربية 2024

a) is catching b) catch c) catches d) will catch

5. We must quiet in the library. كفر الشيخ 2024

a) are b) be c) do d) am

6. You help your mother. دمياط 2024

a) aren't b) doesn't c) have d) must

7. You have special skills to be an astronaut. بورسعيد 2024

a) has b) must c) had d) having

8. Without rain, the grass can't بني سويف 2024

a) grew b) grows c) growing d) grow

9. You look left and right before you cross the road. المنيا 2024

a) must b) will c) mustn't d) won't

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

3

Read the following text and answer the questions.

It was another long, hot day in the grassland. Cub was with his mother, and he lay in the sunshine. But his mother looked worried because there wasn't rain. She hoped it would rain soon. If it doesn't rain, the grass won't grow. Then they will be hungry. If the grass doesn't grow, the rabbits don't have any food. But it rained and Cub was happy again.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- It was hot in the
a) grassland b) club c) hotel d) tent
- The underlined word "he" refers to
a) mother b) cub c) rabbit d) sky

B) Answer the following questions.

- How did mother feel at the start of the story?
- What will happen if it doesn't rain?

4

Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

- cub - find - can't - The - rabbits - any - .
.....
سوهاج 2024
- don't - The - rabbits - have - any - food - eat - to - .
.....
السويس 2024

5

Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

Grassland ecosystem

Guiding elements:

(hot - live - animals - rain - grass - food)

Writing Corner

Ecosystem

An ecosystem is all the animals and plants in an area. The ecosystem can be as small as a pond or as big as a forest.

In an ecosystem, living things such as plants and animals interact with non-living things such as water, rocks, and soil. The different species in an ecosystem make a community, and they all need each other to survive.

A healthy heart

Your heart beats over 100,000 times a day! So it's important to keep your heart healthy. When you walk, run, swim, or cycle, you make your heart work harder. If you exercise regularly, your heart works better and you can get the minerals, nutrients, and oxygen you need more easily.

How to stay healthy

Health is very important. I love sports. I play tennis, football, and basketball. I eat healthy food like fruit, vegetables, and rice. I don't eat a lot of chocolate because I know it isn't very healthy. In the evening, I want to relax, so I read a book.

Review on Unit (1)

Ecosystems

grassland	المراعي / أرض عُشبية	marine	بحري
rainforest	غابة مطيرة	species	أنواع / فصائل
freshwater	ماء عذب	soil	تربة زراعية
living things	كائنات حية	mangrove forests	غابات المنجروف
non-living things	كائنات غير حية	desert	صحراء
Amazon rainforest	غابات الأمازون المطيرة	community	مجتمع

Animals

dugong	حيوان الأطوم	worm	دودة
kingfisher	طائر الرفراف	cub	شبل
lizard	سحلية	buzzing bees	نحل طنان

The heart

arteries	شرايين	oxygen	أكسجين
veins	أوردة	beat	يدق / ينبض
carbon dioxide	ثاني أكسيد الكربون	blood	دم

Others

salt water	ماء مالح	wadi	وادي
mangrove tree	شجرة المانجروف	illnesses	أمراض
custard apple tree	شجرة تفاح الكاسترد	diseases	أمراض
medicinal plant	نبات طبي	interact	يتفاعل
survive	ينجو / يبقى علي قيد الحياة	pollen	حبوب اللقاح

Adjective		Abstract Noun	
beautiful	جميل	beauty	جمال
patient	صبور	patience	صبر
lucky	محظوظ	luck	حظ
successful	ناجح	success	نجاح

Relative Clauses

who

الذي / التي (للعاقل)

👉 for people

e.g. We met a man **who** works in a garden.

which

الذي / التي (لغير العاقل)

👉 for things

e.g. A wadi is an ecosystem **which** is normally dry.

where

حيث (للمكان)

👉 for places

e.g. We learned a lot about the area **where** they live.

Linking Words

and

✍ We went to the beach **and** we swam in the sea.

but

✍ Hany likes basketball, **but** he doesn't like football.

because

✍ Nadine goes to the pool **because** she loves to swim.

so

✍ Lara wants to keep her heart healthy, **so** she does exercise.

Dictation on Unit (1)

Lesson (1)

.....	بحري	.....	غابة
.....	صحراء	.....	مياه عذبة
.....	عاصفة	.....	أرض عُشبية
.....	رحلة	.....	غابة مطيرة

Lesson (3)

.....	فاكهة الكاسترد	.....	معرض
.....	مظلة غابات الأمازون المطيرة	.....	مصور فوتوغرافي
.....	يتعلم	.....	الحياة البرية

Lesson (4)

.....	طائر الرفراف	.....	دودة
.....	الأطوم (حيوان ثديي مائي)	.....	حبوب اللقاح

Lesson (5)

.....	قلب	.....	دم
.....	شرايين	.....	الجهاز الدوري
.....	أوردة	.....	ثاني أكسيد الكربون

Lesson (7)

.....	ميت	.....	أشعة الشمس
.....	مطر	.....	صلب / قاسٍ
.....	جميل	.....	بسعادة
.....	جوع	.....	شبل
.....	يوم حار	.....	دافئ

Exam On Unit (1)

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and answer the questions.

1. How many times does your heart beat a day?
2. When can you make your heart work harder?
3. When can your heart work better?
4. What can you get when you exercise?

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

Arteries - blood - oxygen - carbon dioxide - water

In some ways, humans are similar to plants. Think about our circulatory system. Instead of water, our veins and arteries carry 1) around our bodies. 2) move blood away from our heart. Veins carry blood to it. The nutrients and 3) that we need are in our blood. But we don't use 4) like plants do.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Hundreds of different kinds of fish, birds, insects, and other animals live in the mangrove forests. We could see many little fish swimming in the shallow water among the roots of the trees, where bigger fish and other animals couldn't catch them. That is how mangrove trees help young fish survive. The leaves of the mangrove trees take four times more carbon dioxide from the air than other kinds of trees. Mangrove trees help us with global warming. We also saw small yellow flowers on the mangrove trees. There are a lot of bees and other insects on them. Bees make a special honey from the mangrove flowers.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

القاهرة 2024

1. The mangrove trees help young fish
a) die b) destroy c) survive d) damage
2. The main idea of the text is about
a) honey b) mangrove trees c) fish d) butterflies

B) Answer the following questions.

3. What kind of living things live in the mangrove forests?
4. What do bees make from mangrove flowers?

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

A Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. Jubari was born in Wadi el Gemal. ()
2. Jubari wasn't very brave. ()

B Complete the following.

1. Subira showed Jubari where to rest on days.
2. Jubari and Subira's favorite food was desert

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. This is the ball I bought yesterday.
a) where b) who c) which d) when
2. I have a friend lives in Aswan. القاهرة 2023
a) where b) which c) who d) when
3. Fish, chicken, fruit are all healthy food. كفر الشيخ 2023
a) and b) but c) so d) because
4. Manal can't sleep well she has a headache. بني سويف 2023
a) but b) because c) and d) so

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. can't - Most trees - grow - in - water - salt - . القاهرة 2024
.....
2. does - your - beat - How - often - heart - ? الأقصر 2024
.....

7 Write an email of FIFTY (50) words about:الأقصر 2023

to your friend Amany about an ecosystem. Your name is Laila.

Your email address is laila@yahoo.com. Your friend's email address is amany@yahoo.com

Guiding elements:

(animals / small / plants / living / non-living)

Unit 2

Look around you

Ik-Kil cenote, a cave in Mexico

In this unit, the students will ...

- learn words connected to geography, geology, and extreme weather.
- read and understand two articles about places in Africa.
- review the past simple and learn to use the present perfect.
- listen and understand people talking about important geographical features.
- understand a story about a storm-chaser.
- find out about volcanoes on the island of Java.
- write a description of an unusual geological formation and learn how to introduce a topic.
- understand a story about a balloon ride.

Key vocabulary

erode

يفتت / يزيل / ينحت

crater

فوهة (بركان)

erupt

wetlands

أراضي رطبة / مستنقعات

wonders

عجائب

canyon

dunes

كثبان رملية

continent

قارة

valley

Natural Wonders

Ngorongoro Crater

فوهة بركان نجورونجورو

Mount Kilimanjaro

جبل كليمنجارو

Victoria Falls

شلالات فيكتوريا

the Sahara Desert

صحراء الكبرى

Extra vocabulary

mountain

جبل

buffalos

جاموس

ecosystem

النظام البيئي

lake

بحيرة

leopard

فهد

grasslands

أراضي عشبية / مراعي

rainforest

غابة مطيرة

enormous

ضخم - هائل

snow

جليد

coast

ساحل

cubic

مكعب

farther

أبعد

volcano

بركان

shape

شكل

volcanic

بركاني

dry

جاف

Antarctic

القطب الجنوبي

Arctic

القطب الشمالي

Lesson (1)

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs انجاز عيشة

	Present	Past	P.P
form	يشكل - يكون	formed	formed
include	يتضمن - يشتمل	included	included
climb	يتسلق	climbed	climbed
cover	يغطي	covered	covered
destroy	يدمر	destroyed	destroyed

Definitions

canyon	a deep narrow place where a river runs between tall rocks	وادي عميق
crater	the large round hole in the middle of a volcano	فوهة (بركان)
dune	a hill made of sand shaped by the wind	كتيب رملي
erode	changed or destroyed by rain, wind, the sea etc.	يزيل / يتآكل
erupt	send out smoke and fire (from a volcano)	يثور
valley	a low area of land between two mountains	وادي
wetland	an area of land that is often covered by water	مستنقع / أرض رطبة

Did you know ?

There are thousands of cenotes (فجوات صخرية) in Mexico. People go swimming and diving in their cool, clear water.

Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Important expressions and prepositions

square kilometer	متر مربع	fall into	يقع - يسقط في
over 600 meters tall	يزيد طوله عن ٦٠٠ متر	a low area	منطقة منخفضة
on the borders	على الحدود	at the top	على القمة
tropical rainforests	غابات استوائية مطيرة	made of	يتكون من
a deep narrow place	مكان ضيق عميق	covered by	مغطى بـ
shaped by the wind	تشكل بواسطة الرياح	cubic meter	متر مكعب

Note: ————— How + adj. صفة?

- How big...?	كم حجم ؟	- How long...?	كم المدة ؟
- How wide ...?	كم عرض ؟	- How tall...?	كم طول ؟
- How high ...?	كم ارتفاع ؟		

- 1- How big is the Ngorongoro Crater? - 260 square kilometers.
- 2- How wide are the Victoria Falls? - 1,708 meters wide.
- 3- How high are the Victoria Falls? - 108 meters high.
- 4- How tall is Mount Kilimanjaro? - 5,895 meters tall.
- 5- How big is the Sahara Desert? - About the size of the USA.
- 6- How long have people lived in the Sahara Desert? - Thousands of years.

Did you know ?

There are more than 20 deserts around the world.
Asia has the most desert of the continents.

Help your child learn questions with (How).
ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم السؤال باستخدام (How).

Lesson (1)

Look and read.

NATURAL WONDERS OF AFRICA

عجائب أفريقيا الطبيعية

The African continent is an amazing place, with mountains, deserts, lakes, valleys, and rainforests. There are beautiful coasts, waterfalls, and volcanoes. It has some of the most famous **natural wonders** in the world. Let's read about four of these.

القارة الأفريقية مكان رائع ، به الجبال والصحاري والبحيرات والوديان والغابات المطيرة. هناك سواحل جميلة وشلالات وبراكين. بها بعض من عجائب الطبيعة الأكثر شهرة في العالم. دعونا نقرأ عن أربعة من هذه.

1) Ngorongoro Crater:

The Ngorongoro Crater in Tanzania is the largest volcanic crater in the world. It formed when a volcano erupted millions of years ago. It is



about 260 square kilometers. The sides of the crater are over 600 meters tall, and inside there are **wetlands** and forests. You can see lots of different animals, birds, and plants there. Many big animals live there, including lions, elephants, buffaloes, and leopards.

فوهة نجورونجورو في تنزانيا هي أكبر فوهة بركانية في العالم. تشكلت عندما ثار بركان منذ ملايين السنين. تبلغ مساحتها حوالي 260 كيلومترا مربعا. يبلغ طول جوانب الحفرة أكثر من 600 متر ، وفي الداخل توجد أراضي رطبة وغابات. يمكنك رؤية الكثير من الحيوانات والطيور والنباتات المختلفة هناك. تعيش هناك العديد من الحيوانات الكبيرة ، بما في ذلك الأسود والفيلة والجاموس والفهود.

2) Victoria Falls:

This enormous waterfall is on the Zambezi River, on the border between Zambia and Zimbabwe. It's 1,708 meters wide and 108 meters high.



Every minute, over 5 million cubic meters of water falls into a big canyon which the water has eroded. When the water falls, it makes a lot of noise!

هذا الشلال الهائل يقع على نهر زامبيزي ، على الحدود بين زامبيا وزيمبابوي. يبلغ عرض الشلال 1708 متر وارتفاعه 108 متر. في كل دقيقة ، يسقط أكثر من 5 ملايين متر مكعب من المياه في واد كبير والتي كونته المياه. عندما يسقط الماء ، فإنه يحدث الكثير من الضوضاء!

3) Mount Kilimanjaro:

جبل كليمنجارو:

Mount Kilimanjaro is made of three volcanoes. Scientists think that it hasn't erupted for 360,000 years. Mount Kilimanjaro is the tallest mountain in Africa, at 5,895 meters.



Every year, about 25,000 people climb it, but it is difficult. The mountain is very big and has lots of different **ecosystems**. It starts in the hot grassland. Farther up, there are tropical rainforests, and at the top there is snow and ice.

يتكون جبل كليمنجارو من ثلاثة براكين. يعتقد العلماء أنه لم تثر منذ 360 ألف سنة. جبل كليمنجارو هو الأطول في أفريقيا، بارتفاع 5895 متر. كل عام، يتسلقه حوالي 25 ألف شخص، لكن الأمر صعب. الجبل كبير جدا وبه الكثير من النظم البيئية المختلفة. يبدأ في الأراضي العشبية الحارة. وصعودا إلى قمته توجد غابات مطيرة استوائية، وفي الأعلى يوجد ثلج وجليد.

4) The Sahara Desert:

الصحراء الكبرى:

The Sahara Desert is the largest hot desert in the world (the Arctic and the Antarctic are bigger but



are cold deserts). It covers eleven countries and is nine million square kilometers - that's about the size of the USA! Some of the **sand dunes** can be about 180 meters high. Although it is a very dry place, some plants and animals live here, and people have lived here for thousands of years, too.

الصحراء الكبرى هي الأكثر حرارة في العالم (القطب الشمالي والقطب الجنوبي أكبر ولكنها صحارى باردة). تغطي إحدى عشرة دولة وتبلغ مساحتها تسعة ملايين كيلومتر مربع. وهذا يعادل حجم الولايات المتحدة الأمريكية! يمكن أن يصل ارتفاع بعض الكثبان الرملية إلى حوالي 180 مترا. على الرغم من أنه مكان جاف للغاية، إلا أن بعض النباتات والحيوانات تعيش هنا، وقد عاش الناس هنا منذ آلاف السنين أيضا.

General Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. The Victoria Falls are on the River.
a) Zambezi b) Nile c) Amazon d) Mississippi
2. Victoria Falls are meters wide.
a) 1,608 b) 1,708 c) 1,808 d) 1,908
3. Victoria Falls are 108 meters
a) deep b) wide c) high d) long
4. When the water falls, it makes a lot of
a) sound b) voice c) view d) noise

2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

countries - dry - largest - dunes - cities

The Sahara Desert is the 1) hot desert in the world. It covers eleven 2) and is nine million square kilometers - that's about the size of the USA! Some of the sand 3) can be about 180 meters high. Although it is a very 4) place, some plants and animals live here, and people have lived here for thousands of years, too.

3 Read the following text then answer the questions.

Mount Kilimanjaro is made of three volcanoes. Scientists think that it hasn't erupted for 360,000 years. Mount Kilimanjaro is the tallest mountain in Africa, at 5,895 meters. Every year, about 25,000 people climb it, but it is difficult. The mountain is very big and has lots of different ecosystems. It starts in the hot grassland. Farther up, there are tropical rainforests, and at the top there is snow and ice.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Mount Kilimanjaro is made of three
a) floods b) volcanoes c) earthquakes d) craters

Help your child deal with such questions.

AI-BAHER - Connect Plus (5) - First Term 63

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

2. Mount Kilimanjaro is the tallest mountain in
 a) Asia b) Africa c) America d) Europe
3. Every year, about 25 people climb
 a) tens b) hundred c) thousand d) million

B) Answer the following questions.

4. What's the main idea of the text?
 5. Where can you find snow and ice?

4 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. Mount - How tall - is - Kilimanjaro - ?

 2. is - the - The Sahara Desert - desert - hottest - in the world - .

 3. continent - The African - place - amazing - an - is - .

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. The Ngorongoro Crater in Tanzania is the largest volcanic in the world
 a) crater b) wetland c) dune d) desert
2. The sand can be about 180 meters high
 a) dunes b) desert c) wetland d) river
3. A is a deep narrow place where a river runs between tall rocks
 a) valley b) canyon c) crater d) dune
4. "....." means to send out smoke and fire from a volcano
 a) Destroy b) Cover c) Erupt d) Erode
5. A is a low area of land between two mountains
 a) crater b) wetland c) canyon d) valley

6 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

The African Continent

Guiding elements:

(amazing - coasts - natural - wonders)

Lesson (2)

LANGUAGE

Key vocabulary

ancient Egyptians	المصريون القدماء	papyrus	ورق البردي
climate change	تغير المناخ	sail on a boat	يبحر في قارب
geographical facts	حقائق جغرافية	travel by plane	يسافر بالطائرة

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	P.P
visit	يزور	visited	visited
affect	يؤثر على	affected	affected
travel	يسافر	traveled	traveled
last	يدوم / يستمر	lasted	lasted

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	P.P
get	يحصل على	got	got
tell	يخبر	told	told
meet	يقابل	met	met
make	يصنع	made	made
see	يرى	saw	seen
eat	يأكل	ate	eaten
do / does	يفعل	did	done
be	يكون	was / were	been

Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Past Simple Tense

زمن الماضي البسيط

Form The second form of the verb

يتكون من التصريف الثاني للفعل (بإضافة d, ed, ied للفعل المنتظم)

الأفعال غير المنتظمة تحفظ:

① Regular: verb + (d / ed / ied)

② Irregular: the verb changes

e.g. I **traveled** to Luxor last week.

e.g. We **ate** fish yesterday.

Usage

To talk about an action that started and finished in the past

e.g. I **went** to the park last month.

Negative

Subject (الفاعل) + didn't + inf (مصدر الفعل)

e.g. I **didn't visit** the desert last Friday.

Question

Yes/No question

Did + subject (الفاعل) + inf. (مصدر الفعل) ?

e.g. Did you **do** your homework? - Yes, I **did**. - No, I **didn't**.

Wh-question

Q.W + **did** + subject (الفاعل) + inf. (مصدر الفعل) ?

e.g. When **did** you **travel** to Aswan? - I **traveled** there a year ago.

Keywords

yesterday

أمس last

... ago

منذ

in (2010)

في عام (٢٠١٠) in the past

في الماضي

Lesson (2)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- I to the zoo yesterday.
a) go b) went c) will go d) goes
- When did you tennis?
a) play b) plays c) playing d) played
- We Aswan two weeks ago.
a) visit b) visited c) have visited d) visits
- Why you go to the market last week?
a) do b) does c) did d) will
- We swim in the sea yesterday.
a) didn't b) aren't c) haven't d) don't

2 Order the words to make correct sentences.

- made - tea - of - I - a cup - .
- did - eat - What - yesterday - you - ?
- on - Did - yesterday - a ship - travel - you - ?
- did - an hour - ago - homework - We - our - .
- didn't - ful - medames - eat - They - .

3 Read and complete with the correct form.

- I (travel) to Alexandria last year.
- We (go) shopping two weeks ago.
- She (meets) her friends last Friday.
- Sherif (studies) English yesterday.
- He never (travels) by plane in the past.

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Present Perfect Tense.

زمن المضارع التام

Form

I / We / You / They / plural noun	+	have	+ P.P
He / She / It / singular noun	+	has	

e.g. I **have eaten** fish.

e.g. She **has seen** her friends.

've = have
's = has

Usage

 To talk about actions that started in the past and continue to the present.

يعبر عن أحداث بدأت في الماضي وما زالت مستمرة حتى الآن:

e.g. I've **lived** in Cairo for 20 years.

 To talk about an experience.

للتحدث عن خبرة (تجربة حياتية):

e.g. She **has met** the king.

Negative

I / We / You / They / plural noun	+	haven't	+ P.P
He / She / It / singular noun	+	hasn't	

e.g. We **haven't studied** French.

e.g. Ali **hasn't seen** the new teacher.

Question

Yes / No question

Have + (I / we / you / they / plural noun)	+	P.P	?
Has + (he / she / it / singular noun)			

 Have you **bought** a car?

- Yes, I **have**.

- No, I **haven't**.

Lesson (2)

Has she traveled to France?

- Yes, she has.

- No, she hasn't.

Wh-question

have + (I / we / you / they / plural noun)

Q.W +

+ P.P?

has + (he / she / it / singular noun)

Where have you been?

I've been to Luxor.

Keywords

just

تَوَّا

e.g. I've just bought a pen.

already

بالفعل

e.g. He's already cooked a meal.

- I have cooked a meal already.

yet

بعد/حتى الآن
"في السؤال و النفي"

e.g. Have you done your homework yet?

e.g. No, I haven't done my homework yet.

ever

من قبل/سابق
"في السؤال"

e.g. Have you ever seen an elephant?

never

أبدًا

"تعطي معنى النفي"

e.g. No, I've never seen an elephant.

since

منذ

"يأتي بعدها بداية الحدث"

e.g. I've studied English since 2017.

for

امدة

"يأتي بعدها مدة الحدث"

e.g. I've studied English for 7 years.

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- Waleed by bus, taxi, and train.
a) has traveled b) travel c) traveling d) have traveled
- My uncle us about his trip to Cairo.
a) has told b) tell c) have told d) telling
- Grandma ful medames for breakfast.
a) have made b) has made c) making d) make
- We on a boat.
a) has never sailed b) sails
c) have never sailed d) never sailing
- Aya has never a famous person.
a) meet b) will meet c) meets d) met

2 Order the words to make correct sentences.

- ever - Luxor - to - you - Have - traveled - ?
- a traditional - She - market - visited - has - .
- has - traveled - Aswan - to - never - Sara - .
- they - another - Have - country - visited - ever - ?
- eaten - He - has - saydeya - never - .

3 Read and complete with the correct form.

- I have (see) Omar in the club.
- We have (ever) travelled to America.
- My grandpa's (tell) us a nice story.
- (Have) she bought an ice cream yet?
- Have you (never) sailed on a boat?

General Activities

1

Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

travel - visited - holiday - went - have gone

Reem and Ahmed are going to Luxor on 1) with their parents this year. They haven't 2) Luxor before. They are going to 3) to Luxor from Cairo. It isn't the first time they've traveled somewhere. They 4) to Jordan two years ago.

2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Sherif fish from the Nile many times.
a) eat b) has eaten c) have eaten d) eaten
2. We Aswan yet.
a) visited b) will visit c) have visited d) haven't visited
3. he traveled on a plane or train?
a) Is b) Was c) Have d) Has
4. I you this story already.
a) tell b) have told c) has told d) will tell
5. Have you ever on a ship?
a) traveled b) to travel c) travels d) traveling
6. fish soup?
a) You have eaten b) Has eaten he
c) Have you eaten d) You are eating
7. A) Have you visited the desert? B) Yes, I
a) am b) have c) has d) can
8. Has Fares traveled by train?
a) ever b) never c) yet d) for
9. Youssef and Wael seen an elephant.
a) has never b) have never c) are never d) never have
10. Has Mom fesikh for Sham El-Nassim?
a) make b) makes c) made d) making

Lesson (3)

MAN-MADE WONDERS OF AFRICA

Key vocabulary

man-made	من صنع الإنسان	excited	متحمس
archaeologist	عالم الآثار	incredible	لا يصدق - غير معقول
ruins	أطلال - بقايا	temples	معابد
centuries	قرون	cave	كهف
columns	أعمدة	monuments	آثار

Wonders of Africa

Man-made wonders in Africa		Country	
Paintings in a cave	رسومات على جدران كهف	North Africa	شمال إفريقيا
Ruins of Great Zimbabwe	أطلال زيمبابوي العظمى	Zimbabwe	زيمبابوي
The Canopy Walk	ممشى كانوبي برواندا	Rwanda	رواندا
Kano City Walls	أسوار مدينة كانو بنيجيريا	Nigeria	نيجيريا
Pyramids of Meroë	أهرامات ميرو بالسودان	Sudan	السودان
Pyramids of Giza	أهرامات الجيزة		
the Valley of the Kings	وادي الملوك	Egypt	مصر
the Sphinx	أبو الهول		

Natural wonders

Natural wonders in Africa		Country	
Red Sea Coral Reef	الشعاب المرجانية بالبحر الأحمر	Egypt	مصر
Ocavango Delta	دلتا أوكافنجو	Botswana	بوتسوانا

Conjugation of verbs

Present	Past	P.P
sell	يبيع sold	sold
feel	يشعر felt	felt
learn	يتعلم learnt / learned	learnt / learned
show	يعرض showed	shown

Lesson (3)

Extra Vocabulary

stone	حجر	unusual	غريب - غير مأنوف	ground	أرض
zebra	حمار وحشي	interested	مهتم	special	خاص / مميز

Important expressions and prepositions

from other countries
Nyungwe National Park
Thousands of years ago
There's a lot more to see
The Afrikaans Language Monument
from all over the world

من دول أخرى
متنزه نونجوي الوطني
منذ آلاف السنين
هناك الكثير لتراه
أثر اللغة الأفريقانية
من جميع أنحاء العالم

Did you know ?

There are 54 countries in Africa today. People think there are 1,500 - 2,000 different languages! The main language is Arabic, and there are many other important ones such as Swahili and Yoruba, as well as English, French and Portuguese.



Look and read.

Man-made Wonders of Africa

عجائب أفريقية من صنع الإنسان

The natural world in Africa is beautiful, but people in this continent have made many incredible things, too. Some of the most important man-made wonders are in Egypt: the Pyramids of Giza, the Sphinx, the temples of Abu Simbel, and the Valley of the Kings. People come from all over the world to visit these places and learn about Egypt's history. But there's a lot more to see in Africa.

العالم الطبيعي في أفريقيا جميل ، لكن الناس في هذه القارة صنعوا العديد من الأشياء المذهلة أيضا. بعض أهم هذه العجائب التي من صنع الإنسان في مصر: أهرامات الجيزة وأبو الهول ومعابد أبو سمبل ووادي الملوك. يأتي الناس من جميع أنحاء العالم لزيارة هذه الأماكن والتعرف على تاريخ مصر. ولكن هناك الكثير لرؤيته في أفريقيا.

In North Africa, there are paintings on rocks and in caves which people made thousands of years ago. They often show animals and people. Archaeologists think that the Sahara wasn't as dry in the past because some of the paintings show animals such as crocodiles that live in water.



Paintings in a cave

في شمال إفريقيا، توجد لوحات على الصخور و في الكهوف التي صنعها الناس منذ آلاف السنين. وغالبا ما تُظهر الحيوانات والناس. علماء الآثار يعتقدون أن الصحراء لم تكن جافة في الماضي لأن بعض اللوحات تظهر حيوانات مثل التماسيح التي تعيش في الماء.

In Zimbabwe, there are the ruins of Great Zimbabwe, an important city which was built between the 11th and 15th centuries.



Ruins of Great Zimbabwe

في زيمبابوي، هناك أنقاض زيمبابوي العظمى، وهي مدينة مهمة تم بناؤها بين القرنين الـ 11 والـ 15.

It had very large stone walls, and people here sold lots of things to different countries around the world. A newer monument is in South Africa. The Afrikaans Language Monument is made of stone columns and opened in 1975. The Afrikaans language developed when people from other countries came to Africa. The language has words from lots of different countries, and is now used in South Africa and Namibia.

كان لها جدران حجرية كبيرة جدا، وباع الناس هنا الكثير من الأشياء إلى بلدان مختلفة حول العالم. كما يقع أثر أحدث في جنوب إفريقيا. وهو نصب اللغة الأفريكانية المصنوع من أعمدة حجرية والذي افتتح في عام 1975. تطورت اللغة الأفريكانية عندما جاء أشخاص من دول أخرى إلى إفريقيا. اللغة بها كلمات من الكثير من البلدان المختلفة، وتستخدم الآن في جنوب إفريقيا وناميبيا.

Visitors to Rwanda can have an amazing rainforest adventure on The Canopy Walk in Nyungwe National Park. The bridge was built in 2010. It's 160 meters long and 74 meters above the ground. It is in the highest part of the trees, so visitors can see monkeys and birds.



The Canopy Walk

زوار رواندا يمكن أن يقوموا بمغامرة مذهلة في الغابات المطيرة وذلك على مشر كانون في حديقة نيونجوي الوطنية. تم بناء الجسر في 2010. ويبلغ طوله 160 متر وارتفاعه 74 متر فوق الأرض. إنه في أعلى جزء من الأشجار، لذلك يمكن للزوار رؤية القردة والطيور.

General Activities

1

Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

Egypt - history - Kings - man-made - princes

Some of the most important 1) wonders are in
2) The Pyramids of Giza, the Sphinx, the temples of Abu
Simbel and the Valley of the 3) People come from all
over the world to visit these places and learn about Egypt's 4)

2

Read the following text then answer the questions.

In Zimbabwe, there are the ruins of Great Zimbabwe, an important city which was built between the 11th and 15th centuries. It had very large stone walls, and people here sold lots of things to different countries around the world.

A newer monument is in South Africa. The Afrikaans Language Monument is made of stone columns and opened in 1975. The Afrikaans language developed when people from other countries came to Africa. The language has words from lots of different countries, and is now used in South Africa and Namibia.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- Great Zimbabwe city was built between the 11th and 15th
a) decades b) centuries c) months d) years
- The Afrikaans Language Monument is in
a) Egypt b) Zimbabwe c) Nigeria d) South Africa
- The Afrikaans Language is now used in countries.
a) two b) three c) four d) five

B) Answer the following questions.

- What does the underlined pronoun It refer to?
- Where is the Afrikaans Language used now?

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- Africa is a
a) lake b) country c) city d) continent
- Some of the most important man-made are in Egypt.
a) wonders b) wanders c) mountains d) rivers
- think that the Sahara wasn't dry in the past.
a) Doctors b) Teachers c) Farmers d) Archaeologists
- In Zimbabwe, there are the of Great Zimbabwe which was an important city.
a) rules b) ruins c) roles d) oars
- The Afrikaans Language Monument is made of stone
a) poles b) columns c) circles d) squares
- Visitors to Rwanda can have an amazing rainforest on the Canopy Walk.
a) match b) sport c) adventure d) tree
- You can enjoy visiting the of Abu Simbel.
a) rocks b) caves c) walls d) temples
- The Red Sea Coral Reef is a wonder.
a) natural b) man-made c) normal d) usual
- You can see paintings of animals and people inside some in North Africa.
a) houses b) factories c) clubs d) caves
- In which countries do people speak the Afrikaans ?
a) symbol b) style c) Language d) subject
- What's special about the Canopy in Rwanda?
a) Walk b) Run c) Ruin d) Painting

4 Order the words to make correct sentences.

- Desert - the past - The Sahara - dry - in - wasn't - .
- see - and - Rwanda - in - Visitors - birds - monkeys - can - .
- 54 - Africa - in - There - countries - are - .
- world - The natural - Africa - is - beautiful - in - .

Lesson (4)

STORY: THE STORM-CHASER

Key vocabulary

storm-chaser
photographer
extreme weather
dust storm

متتبع العواصف
مصور فوتوغرافي
طقس شديد
عاصفة ترابية

hurricane
thunderstorm
flood
snow

إعصار
عاصفة رعدية
فيضان
جليد

Extra vocabulary

forecast
trip
frightened
loud

نشرة جوية - يتنبأ
رحلة قصيرة
خائف
عالي الصوت

The USA
event
competition
during

الولايات المتحدة الأمريكية
حدث
مسابقة
انماء

Conjugation of verbs

Present

Past

P.P

fly
drive
take
win
send
hear
keep
forecast

يطير - يسافر flew
يقود drove
يأخذ took
يفوز won
يرسل sent
يسمع heard
يحافظ على kept
يتنبأ forecast / ed

flew
drove
took
won
sent
heard
kept
forecast /

Important expressions and prepositions

20 kilometres away

على بعد عشرين كيلو متر

stay at

يمكث في / يقبم في

take photos

يلتقط صوراً

close to

قريب من

keep safe

يحافظ على سلامة

travel to

يسافر إلى

heavy snow

ثلوج كثيفة

for work

لأجل العمل

global warming

الاحتباس الحراري

win a prize for

يفوز بجائزة لـ

dangerous situations

مواقف خطيرة

drive away

يقود سيارته بعيداً

Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Study the flowing.

The **thunderstorm** was white and it looked like ice cream!

كانت العاصفة الرعدية بيضاء وبدأت مثل الآيس كريم.

The **hurricane** was very noisy. The sky was black and it rained all the afternoon.

كان الأعصار صاخبا. كانت السماء سوداء وأمطرت طوال فترة الظهيرة.

After the **dust storm**, there was a lot of dust on my parents' new car.

بعد العاصفة الترابية كان هناك الكثير من التراب على سيارة والدي الجديدة.

The **storm-chaser** followed the thunderstorm in his car.

تبع متعقب العواصف الرعدية وهو في سيارته.

Read the story.

The storm-chaser

مطارد / متعقب العاصفة

Kamal's parents often went to other countries for their work. Usually, Kamal and his younger sisters stayed at home with their grandparents. Two years ago, Kamal's parents said, "You can come with us when we next go away for work." Kamal was very excited because his parents were **storm-chasers**. These are people who travel to places where a **hurricane** or another form of **extreme weather** is forecast. They get very close to the extreme weather event to study it.

غالبا ما ذهب والدا كمال إلى بلدان أخرى لعملهم. عادة، كان يبقى كمال وأخواته في المنزل مع أجدادهم.

قبل عامين، قال والدا كمال: "يمكنك أن تأتي معنا المرة القادمة عندما نذهب للعمل."

كان كمال متحمسا جدا لأن والديه كانا متعقبين للعواصف! هؤلاء هم الأشخاص الذين يسافرون إلى أماكن يتوقع فيها إعصار أو شكل آخر من أشكال الطقس القاسي. يقتربون جدا من حدث لطقس القاسي لدراسته.

Kamal and his parents flew in a big plane to the USA where they could study hurricanes. "How can I help you when you work?" Kamal asked them when they arrived. "You can take some photos for us," they said, and they took something from a bag. It was a new camera! Kamal had seen **thunderstorms** in Egypt, but not a hurricane. It was very exciting.

Lesson (4)

سافر كمال والديه في طائرة كبيرة إلى الولايات المتحدة حيث يمكنهم دراسة الأعاصير. سألهم كمال عما إذا كان يمكنه مساعدتهم في العمل؟ قالوا: "يمكنك التقاط بعض الصور لنا"، وأخذوا شيئاً من الحقيبة. كانت كاميرا جديدة! كان كمال قد شهد عواصف رعدية في مصر، لكنه لم يشهد إعصاراً. كان الأمر مثيراً للفضول.

When the hurricane was twenty kilometers away, they drove out to see it. Kamal took some photos of the hurricane through the car window while his parents were outside taking notes about how big the hurricane was. The wind was very strong and very loud and Kamal took many photos.

عندما كان الإعصار على بعد عشرين كيلومتراً، انطلقوا بالسيارة لرؤيته. التقط كمال بعض الصور للإعصار من خلال نافذة السيارة بينما كان والديه بالخارج يدونان ملاحظات حول حجم الإعصار. كانت الرياح قوية جداً وبصوت عالٍ جداً. التقط كمال العديد من الصور.

"Are you frightened?" his dad asked Kamal. "No, because I know you'll keep me safe," said Kamal. When the storm came too near to them, they drove away. Since that trip, Kamal has been to many other places with his parents. He has seen heavy snow in the mountains, floods in Sudan and amazing dust storms in the desert. He has learned a lot about the causes of extreme weather, such as global warming, and he has taken hundreds of photos.

سأل الوالد كمال: "هل أنت خائف؟" قال كمال: "لا، لأنني أعلم أنك ستحافظ على سلامتي". عندما اقتربت العاصفة منهم، ابتعدوا. منذ تلك الرحلة، ذهب كمال إلى العديد من الأماكن الأخرى مع والديه. كما رأى الثلوج الكثيفة في الجبال والفيضانات في السودان والعواصف الترابية المذهلة في الصحراء. لقد تعلم الكثير عن أسباب الطقس القاسي، مثل الاحتباس الحراري، وقد التقط مئات الصور.

Last year, his mom said, "Why don't you send some photos to this online competition?" So Kamal sent the photos you can see below. He won first prize for child photographers, and he also found that he is one of the world's youngest storm-chasers!

العام الماضي، قالت والدته: "لماذا لا ترسل بعض الصور إلى هذه المسابقة عبر الإنترنت؟" لذلك أرسل كمال الصور التي يمكنكم رؤيتها أدناه. فاز بالجائزة الأولى للمصورين الأطفال، واكتشف أيضاً أنه واحد من أصغر متعبي العواصف في العالم!



General Activities

في الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- Kamal has been to many places with his
a) friends b) father c) mother d) parents
- They saw heavy in the mountain
a) snow b) ice c) rain d) stones
- They saw amazing dust storms in the
a) forest b) club c) desert d) tent
- Kamal has learned a lot about extreme
a) weather b) feather c) leather d) climate

2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

hurricane / study / storm-chasers / extreme / make

- Kamal was very excited because his parents were
- 1)! These are people who travel to places where a
 - 2) or another form of 3) weather is forecast
 - They get very close to the extreme weather event to 4) it

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- The followed the thunderstorm in his car
a) farmer b) storm-chaser c) engineer d) doctor
- The was white and looked like ice cream
a) air b) thunderstorm c) weather d) fog
- The was very noisy
The sky was black and it rained all the afternoon.
a) snow b) dust c) sea d) hurricane
- After the , there was a lot of water in the road
a) drought b) flood c) earthquake d) clouds
- Kamal photos of the hurricane
a) had b) took c) spent d) drove

Lesson (4)

6. After the , there was lot of dust on our car.
a) snow b) hurricane c) dust storm d) flood
7. Kamal the first prize for child photographers.
a) won b) earned c) gained d) played
8. Have you ever seen an extreme ?
a) weather b) whether c) wizard d) feather

4 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. he - Has - taken - of - photos - hundreds - ?
.....
2. on - mountain - Heavy - fell - the - snow - .
.....
3. are - thunderstorms - in - interested - Storm-chasers - .
.....
4. some photos - They - of - hurricane - the - took - .
.....

5 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

The storm-chaser

Guiding words:

(photographer - hurricanes - dust storms - thunderstorms - floods)

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Volcanoes

البراكين



soil

تربة زراعية



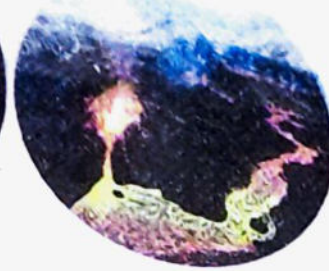
erupt

يشور (البركان)



ash

رماد



lava

حمم بركانية



mud flow

تدفق الطين

Extra vocabulary

pretty

village

poem

burn

material

Java Island

جميل

قرية

قصيدة

يحترق

مادة خام

جزيرة جاوا

mountain

smoke

below

online

fill

تصلة بالإنترنت / على الإنترنت

Definitions

erupt

when fire and rocks come out of the top of a volcano

تور (البركان)

soil

the top part of the Earth in which plants grow

تربة

lava

hot liquid rock that comes out of volcanoes

حمم بركانية

mud

soft, wet material that moves down mountains

تدفق الطين

flow

something soft and gray that you find when a fire stops burning

رماد

ash

Important expressions and prepositions

a safe place

the island people

the helping hand

look down on

مكان آمن

سكان الجزيرة

يد المساعدة

ينظر لأسفل على

come out of

go away

mix with

come back

تخرج من

تذهب بعيدا

تختلط بـ

تعود

Lesson (5)

Good things and bad things about living on Java

Java

fact file

- Java is an **island**.
- There are **many** volcanoes on Java, for example **Salak**.
- When a volcano **erupts**, ash and fire come out of it and the people in the villages have to go **away** from their homes.
- The **soil** in Java is very good for growing plants.



I'd like to live on Java because it is a pretty place.

أود أن أعيش على جزيرة جاوا لأنها مكان جميل.



I wouldn't like to live on Java because it has a lot of dangerous volcanoes.

لا أود أن أعيش على جزيرة جاوا لأن بها الكثير من البراكين الخطيرة.



Rhyming words

الكلمات المتناغمة صوتيًا

They're words with the same sound.

fire
thirty-nine
away
goes
look
blood

higher
online
stay
flows
book
mud

Listen and read the poem.

The Volcanoes of Java

Let me take you to the pretty island of Java,
Where almost everything is made of lava!
It comes from Java's volcanoes,
Which look down on the villages below.

The names of the volcanoes are:
Salak, Guntur, Karaha, Malabar ...
But there are another thirty-nine,
You can find their names online!

When they erupt, there's ash and fire,
Smoke fills the air, going higher and higher,
The island people have to go away,
to a safe place where they can stay.

The lava and ash mix with mud flows,
This makes soil where good food grows,
When the farmers come back to the land,
They thank the volcanoes for the helping hand.

General Activities

1 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

villages - volcanoes - island - lava - safe

Let me take you to the pretty 1) of Java,
where almost everything is made of 2) !

It comes from Java's 3)
which look down on the 4) below.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. The hot red quickly came down the side of the volcano.
a) lava b) seed c) mud d) ash
2. If the volcanoes, fire and rocks will come out of the top of them.
a) make b) erupt c) stay d) take
3. After three days of rain, a heavy came down the side of the big mountain.
a) mud bank b) mud bath c) mud brick d) mud flow
4. In a few months, the seeds we planted in the will grow into small trees.
a) sail b) floor c) soil d) land
5. When the fire stopped burning, there was lots of on the ground.
a) ash b) water c) wood d) lava
6. The people have to go away when the volcanoes erupt.
a) island b) river c) sea d) lake

3 Write a text of **FIFTY (50)** words about:

The island of Java

Guiding words:

(pretty - lava - volcanoes - erupt - soil)

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

AI-BAHER - Connect Plus (5) - First Term 85

Key vocabulary

arch
hole
natural
sandstone

قوس unusual
قذحة / ثقب rainbow
طبيعي description
حجر رملي shape

مريب / غير مالوف
لوس قح
وصف
شكل

Conjugation of verbs

Present

write
ride
forget
take

Past

يكتب wrote
يركب rode
ينسى forgot
يأخذ took

P.P

written
ridden
forgotten
taken

Important expressions and prepositions

late afternoon

في وقت متأخر بعد الظهر

water bottle

زجاجة ماء

white limestone

حجر جير أبيض

look orange

يبدو برتقالي اللون

in the early morning

في الصباح الباكر

geological formations

تكوينات جيولوجية

Nambung National Park

منتزه نامبونج الوطني

wildlife

الحياة البرية

a group of

بجموعة من

full of

مملوء بـ

wild flowers

زهور برية

sun hat

لبعة شمس

tourist brochure

دليل سياحي

ride a horse

يركب حصان

would like to

يريد أن

Read the description.

Rainbow Bridge National Monument - Utah, USA

جسر قوس قزح
التر جسر قوس قزح الوطني - يوتا ، الولايات المتحدة الأمريكية

Rainbow Bridge is one of the largest natural arches in the world. It is also 200 million years old. It is on Lake Powell in Utah, USA. It is 88 meters tall and it is made of red and brown sandstone.



جسر قوس قزح هو واحد من أكبر الأقواس الطبيعية في العالم. بل إن عمره أيضا 200 مليون سنة. هو على بحيرة باول في ولاية يوتا ، الولايات المتحدة الأمريكية. يبلغ طوله 88 مترا وهو مكون من الحجر الرملي الأحمر والبني.

A river eroded a hole in the sandstone and has formed the arch over many, many years.

Rainbow Bridge has been a National Monument since 1910.

If you want to visit it, you have to take a boat, ride a horse, or walk to it.

تسبب نهر في تكوين حفرة بسبب التآكل في الحجر الرملي وشكل قوس على مدى سنوات عديدة. يعتبر جسر قوس قزح نصبا وطنيا منذ عام 1910. إذا كنت ترغب في زيارته ، عليك أن تأخذ قارب، أو تركب حصان أو تمشي إليه.

It is in a very hot desert. So, you should visit it in the spring or in the fall. Don't forget to take your water bottle and a sun hat!

إنه في صحراء حارة جدا. لذلك ، ينبغي عليك زيارته في الربيع أو في الخريف. لا تنس أن تأخذ زجاجة المياه الخاصة بك وقبعة الشمس!

Read the description.

The Pinnacles

القمم الصخرية

The Pinnacles are one of the most unusual geological formations in Western Australia.



القمم الصخرية هي واحدة من أكثر التكوينات الجيولوجية غير العادية في غرب أستراليا.

They are a group of tall white rocks in the Nambung National Park. The Pinnacles are 25,000 to 30,000 years old. They are made of white limestone which the rain and wind have eroded into different shapes.

هم مجموعة من الصخور البيضاء الطويلة في منتزه نامبونج الوطني. وعمرها يتراوح من 25 إلى 30 ألف سنة. وتكونت من الحجر الجيري الأبيض بفعل الأمطار والرياح إلى أشكال مختلفة.

The tallest columns are between three and five meters high. If you want to visit the Pinnacles, the best time of day to see them is in the early morning or late afternoon.

يتراوح ارتفاع الأعمدة الأطول بين ثلاثة وخمسة أمتار. إذا كنت ترغب في زيارة القمم، فإن أفضل وقت في اليوم لرؤيتها هو في الصباح الباكر أو في وقت متأخر بعد الظهر.

At these times, the sun makes them look orange against the yellow sand dunes of the desert. The best time of year to see them is between August and October when the desert is full of beautiful wild flowers! You can drive there from the city of Perth in two hours.

في هذه الأوقات، تجعل الشمس الأعمدة تبدو برتقالية اللون في مقابل الكثبان الرملية الصفراء في الصحراء. أفضل وقت في السنة لرؤيتهم هو بين أغسطس وأكتوبر عندما تكون الصحراء مليئة بالزهور البرية الجميلة؛ يمكنك القيادة إلى هناك من مدينة بيرث في غضون ساعتين.



Writing

Writing a description of an unusual geological formation.
كتابة وصفا عن تكوين جيولوجي غريب.

Tip!:

- To introduce the topic, start the first sentence with the name of your geological formation.
لتقديم الموضوع، ابدأ الجملة الأولى باسم التكوين الجيولوجي.
- Write why this geological formation is important or special in the same sentence.
اكتب لماذا هذا التكوين الجيولوجي مهم أو مميز في نفس الجملة.
- Next, include the location and age of the formation.
بعد ذلك، اذكر الموقع والعمر (التكوين الجيولوجي).
- Explain how it was formed.
اشرح كيف تشكل هذا التكوين الجيولوجي.
- Describe what it looks like and how big it is.
اوصف شكله وحجمه.
- Add extra, interesting information about it.
أضف معلومات إضافية مثيرة عن التكوين الجيولوجي.
- Tell people how they can visit it.
أخبر الناس كيف يمكنهم زيارته.

Do some research. Use the internet and complete the table.

The White Desert, Egypt

Name

Location

Age

Size / Shape

Made of

Eroded by

When to visit

How to get there

Use the information to write a description of 50 words.

Help your child write a description of a geological formation.
ساعد طفلك أن يكتب وصفا عن تكوين جيولوجي.

1**Read and complete the text with the words from the box.**

Lake - eroded - sandstone - arches - Nile

Rainbow Bridge is one of the largest natural 1) in the world.
 It is also 200 million years old. It is on 2) Powell in Utah,
 USA. It is 88 meters tall and it is made of red and brown 3)
 A river 4) a hole in the sandstone and has formed the arch many
 years ago.

2**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.**

- Rainbow is one of the largest natural arches in the world.
 a) Pole b) Pyramid c) Stone d) Bridge
- A river a hole in the sandstone and has formed the arch.
 a) washed b) watered c) eroded d) filled
- You can a horse to visit Rainbow Bridge.
 a) hit b) drive c) walk d) ride
- Don't forget to take your water bottle and a
 a) star b) moon c) sun d) planet
- Rainbow Bridge is a natural geological
 a) nation b) pollution c) information d) formation
- The monument is made of
 a) paper b) fabric c) sandstone d) plastic
- You should visit the Rainbow Bridge in the season.
 a) October b) Friday c) summer d) weak
- The Pinnacles are a group of tall white
 a) trees b) clothes c) shops d) rocks

3

Read the following text then answer the questions.

The Pinnacles are one of the most unusual geological formations in Western Australia. They are a group of tall white rocks in the Nambung National Park. The Pinnacles are 25,000 to 30,000 years old. They are made of white limestone. The tallest columns are between three and five meters high. The best time of day to see them is in the early morning or late afternoon. The best time of year to see them is between August and October when the desert is full of beautiful wild flowers! You can drive there from the city of Perth in two hours.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The Pinnacles are one of the most unusual formations.
a) local b) geological c) historical d) physical
2. The Pinnacles are made of white
a) sand dunes b) limes c) rocks d) limestone
3. You can drive there from the city of Perth in minutes.
a) 2 b) 60 c) 120 d) 40

B) Answer the following questions.

4. What's the text about?

5. What is the best time of day to visit the Pinnacles?

4

Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. years - Rainbow - 200 - old - million - is - Bridge - .
2. a hole - sandstone - A river - the - in - eroded - .
3. is - a very - desert - hot - The monument - in - .
4. to - water - Don't - bottle - your - take - forget - .

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Lesson (7)

STORY: A BALLOON RIDE

Key vocabulary

balloon	منطاد	basket	سلة
pilot	طيار	ribbon	شريط
gentle	لطيف	flame	لهب / شعلة
light-lit	يشعل / أشعل		

Extra vocabulary

tickets	تذاكر	diary	يوميات / مفكرة
festival	مهرجان	palm tree	نخلة
flight	رحلة جوية	tiny	صغير جدًا
excited	مسرور / سعيد	enormous	ضخم
statues	تماثيل	rope	حبل

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present	Past	P.P
laugh	يضحك laughed	laughed
pick	يلتقط picked	picked
drop	يسقط dropped	dropped

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	P.P
fly	يطير / يسافر flew	flown
fall	يقع fell	fallen
find	يجد found	found
shine	تشرق / تسطع shone	shone

Lesson (7)

Definitions

ribbon	a long, soft piece of material	شريط
gentle	slow, not fast or extreme	لطيف
basket	people use it to carry things, and a big one can carry people	سلة
flame	the burning gas that you see in a fire	لهب / شعلة
light / lit	make/made something start to burn	يشعل

Important expressions and prepositions

hot air balloon	منطاد هوائي
a hat on his head	على رأسه قبعة
a perfect weather	طقس مثالي
have a ride	ياخذ جولة
climb into	يتسلق
touch the clouds	يلامس السحاب
special coat	معطف مميز
fall out of	يسقط من

Listen and read the story.



"Come inside, Mariam," said Mom. "It's late."
 Mariam was in the garden. She loved watching the birds. She thought about the places they visited and the things they saw. "I would love to fly," she said. "Like a bird?" Mom laughed. "You are funny!" Mariam's dad came home. He was happy. "Look! I've got tickets for the Luxor hot air balloon festival! We'll see balloons in lots of colors."

قالت أمي: "تعالى إلى الداخل يا مريم". "الوقت متأخر". كانت مريم في الحديقة. كانت تحب مشاهدة الطيور. فكرت في الأماكن التي زاروها والأشياء التي رأوها. قالت: "أحب الطيران". سألتها أمها، وهي تضحك "مثل الطيور؟ أنت مضحكة". عاد والد مريم إلى المنزل. كان سعيدا. وقال "انظروا لدي تذاكر لمهرجان الأقصر للمناطيد الهوائية! سنرى المناطيد ذات الألوان الكثيرة."

Mariam was very excited. All week, she thought about the festival. Finally, the day arrived. Mariam was watching everything when she saw a tall man. He had a special coat and a hat on his head. He was a hot air balloon pilot. As he walked away, a book fell out of his bag. He didn't know. Mariam ran to pick it up.

كانت مريم متحمسة للغاية. طوال الأسبوع، فكرت في المهرجان. أخيرا، حان اليوم. كانت مريم تراقب كل شيء عندما رأت رجلا طويل القامة. كان لديه معطف مميز وقبعة على رأسه. كان طيار مناطد هوائي! بينما كان يبتعد، سقط كتاب من حقيبته. لم يكن يعلم. ركضت مريم لالتقاط الكتاب.

"Look, Mom!" she said. "It's a book about hot air balloon flights." "Oh no!" said Mom. "It's his diary! It's about everywhere he's been." "We must give it back!" said Mariam. Together they ran until they found the man.

قالت مريم "انظري يا أمي!". "إنه كتاب عن رحلات مناطد هوائي". قالت الأم "أوه لا!". "إنها مذكراته! إنها عن الأماكن التي ذهب إليها". قالت مريم "يجب أن نعيدها!". ركضوا معا حتى وجدوا الرجل.

Lesson (7)

Hello! Did you drop this book?" said Mariam's dad. "Thank you!" the man said. "This book is important. I write everywhere that I have traveled to in the balloon! I want to thank you - would you like to have a ride?" He pointed to a beautiful balloon. "Yes, please!" they said.

قال والد مريم "مرحباً! هل أسقطت هذا الكتاب؟". قال الرجل "شكراً لك!". "هذا الكتاب مهم. أكتب فيه كل مكان سافرت إليه في المنطاد. أريد أن أشكركم - هل ترغب في الحصول على جولة؟" وأشار إلى منطاد جميل. قالوا "نعم، من فضلك!".

"It's perfect weather today, with no rain and a gentle wind," he said.

They followed him to the balloon and climbed into the basket. Mariam

watched as he lit the flame. As the air inside the balloon got hot, he dropped the rope and the balloon slowly climbed into the air.



قال الرجل "إنه طقس مثالي اليوم، بدون مطر والرياح لطيفة". تبعوه إلى المنطاد وصعدوا إلى السلة. وشاهدته مريم وهو يشعل النيب. عندما أصبح الهواء داخل المنطاد ساخناً، أسقط الحبل وانطلق المنطاد ببطء في نهواء.

Soon, they were flying over the beautiful city of Luxor. The wind blew them gently through the clear blue sky. They saw green fields and sandy deserts, palm trees, dunes, and mountains.

سرعان ما كانوا يطيرون فوق مدينة الأقصر الجميلة. نقلتهم الرياح بلطف خلال السماء الزرقاء الصافية. رأوا لحقول الخضراء والصحاري الرملية وأشجار النخيل والكثبان والجبال.

They flew over enormous statues and beautiful temples. The Nile looked like a silver ribbon. Everything was quiet, and the houses, cars, and boats were tiny. The sun shone and it felt like they could touch the clouds. "Now I know what it's like to be a bird!" said Mariam.

طاروا فوق تماثيل ضخمة... الجميلة. بدا النيل مثل الشريط الفضي. كان كل شيء هادئاً، وكانت المنازل والسيارات والقوارب صغيرة. أشرقت الشمس وشعروا أنه يمكنهم ملاسة الغيوم. قالت مريم "الآن أعرف معنى أن تكون طائراً!".

General Activities

1 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

balloon - statues - excited - tickets - exciting

One day, Mariam's dad came home. He had 1) for the Luxor hot air 2) festival. Mariam's family were very 3) They climbed into the balloon. Soon they were flying over the beautiful city of Luxor. They flew over enormous 4) and beautiful temples.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- A is a long, soft piece of material.
a) flame b) basket c) balloon d) ribbon
- To is to make something start to burn.
a) light b) fall c) fly d) play
- The word "....." means slow, not fast or extreme.
a) fast b) gentle c) quick d) excited
- People use to carry things.
a) baskets b) balls c) ribbons d) balloons
- "....." is the burning gas that you see in a fire.
a) Flag b) Oxygen c) Air d) Flame
- A is the person who flies a plane or a hot air balloon.
a) pilot b) farmer c) teacher d) baker

3 Order the words to make correct sentences.

- birds - Mariam - watching - loved - .
- about - air - The book - flights - hot - balloon - is - .
- a ride - Would - like - have - to - you - ?

Lesson (7)

4

Read the following text then answer the questions.

Mariam loved watching birds. She wanted to see what they see. One day, Mariam's dad came home. He had tickets for the Luxor hot air balloon festival. Mariam was very excited. When the day arrived, Mariam and her family went to the festival. Mariam was with her parents when she saw a tall man. Something fell. It was a diary. Mariam wanted to give it back. "Thank you," said the pilot. "Would you like to have a ride?" Mariam's family were very excited and they climbed into the balloon. Soon, they were flying over the beautiful city of Luxor. They flew over enormous statues and beautiful temples.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Mariam loved watching
a) animals b) birds c) sports d) clouds
2. The festival was in
a) Aswan b) Cairo c) Giza d) Luxor
3. Mariam's family were very
a) tired b) excited c) sick d) noisy

B) Answer the following questions.

4. What fell from the tall man?
.....
5. What does the underlined pronoun "He" refer to?
.....

5

Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

Guiding words: A trip on a hot air balloon

(Luxor - pilot - gentle - flame - tiny - statues - temples)

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Writing Corner

Wonders of Africa

The African continent is an amazing place, with mountains, deserts, lakes, valleys, and rainforests. There are beautiful coasts, waterfalls, and volcanoes. It has some of the most famous natural wonders in the world, like Ngorongoro Crater, Victoria Falls, Mount Kilimanjaro and the Sahara Desert. There are man-made wonders too, like the Pyramids of Giza.

Rainbow Bridge in the USA

Rainbow Bridge is one of the largest natural arches in the world. It is also 200 million years old. It is on Lake Powell in Utah, USA. It is 100 meters tall and it is made of red and brown sandstone. A river eroded a hole in the sandstone and has formed the arch over many, many years. Rainbow Bridge has been a National Monument since 1910. If you want to visit it, you have to take a boat, ride a horse, or walk to it. It is in a hot desert. So, you should visit it in the spring or in the fall. Don't forget to take your water bottle and a sun hat.

The Sahara Desert

The Sahara Desert is the largest hot desert in the world. It covers eleven countries. Some of the sand dunes can be 180 meters high. Although it is a hot and dry place, some animals and plants live there.

Review on Unit (2)

Vocabulary

valley	وادي	crater	فوهة بركان
canyon	وادي ضيق - منحدر	dunes	تلال (رمية)
wetlands	اراضي رطبة - مستنقعات	erode	ينحدر - يفتت
erupt	يؤثر (البركان)	storm-chaser	متابع العواصف
hurricane	إعصار	thunderstorm	عاصفة رعدية
flood	فيضان	dust storm	عاصفة ترابية
photographer	مصور فوتوغرافي	mountain	جبل
coast	ساحل	grassland	أرض عشبية
excited	مسرور - متحمس	man-made	من صنع الإنسان
archaeologist	عالم آثار	ruins	أطلال
century	قرن (١٠٠ عام)	columns	أعمدة
lava	حجم بركانية	soil	تربة زراعية
mud flow	تدفق الطين	ash	رماد
arch	قوس	diary	يوميات / مفكرة
light - lit	يشعل - أشعل	flame	لهب - شعلة
pilot	طيار	hot air balloon	منطاد هوائي
ribbon	شريط	gentle	لطيف

Natural Wonders

The Sahara Desert	الصحراء الكبرى	Mount Kilimanjaro	جبل كليمنجارو
Victoria Falls	شلالات فيكتوريا	Ngorongoro Crater	فوهة بركان نغورونغورو

Present Perfect Tense

زمن المضارع التام

Form

Subject + have / has + P.P

e.g. I've played tennis.

e.g. She has eaten pizza.

Negative

Subject + haven't / hasn't + P.P

e.g. We haven't studied French.

e.g. He hasn't slept early.

Question

Yes, No question Have / Has + subject + P.P?

e.g. Have you bought a TV?

e.g. Has he ridden a bike?

Wh-question

Q.W + have / has + subject + P.P?

e.g. Where have you been?

- I've been to Luxor.

Keywords

just

I've just met my teacher.

ever

Have you ever seen a lion?

never

No, I've never seen a lion.

already

She's already fed the hens.

She's fed the hens already.

Dictation on Unit (2)

Lesson (1)

بقيت / بريل / يمحت

بثور

قوطة (بركان)

قارة

كتبان رملية

وادي

رشي رضية / مستطعة

برغميق

مخاض

Lesson (2)

المصريون القدماء

تغير المناخ

حقائق جغرافية

ورثي لريتي

بحر في قارب

يسافر دطائرة

Lesson (3)

من صنع الإنسان

عالم الزكاز

أطلال / بقايا

قرون

أعمدة

منحصر

لا بضيق / سير معقول

معبد

كهف

أثر

Lesson (4)

متنوع العواصف

مصور فوتوغرافي

طقس شديد

عاصفة ترابية

إعصار

عاصفة رعدية

فيضان

جسد

Lesson (5)

جزيرة جاوا

بثور (بركان)

رماد

تربة زراعية

ندفق الضيق

حمم بركانية

Lesson (6)

قوس

فتحة / ثقب

طبيعي

حجر رملي

غريب / غير مألوف

قوس قزح

وصف

شكل

Lesson (7)

منطاد

طيار

لطيف

يشعل / أشعل

سنة

شريط

لث / شعبة

Help your child dictate these words.

ساعد طفلك في إملاء هذه الكلمات.

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- Mount Kilimanjaro is made of
a) two b) three c) four d) five
- The volcanoes haven't erupted for thousands of
a) days b) weeks c) months d) years
- Mount Kilimanjaro is the tallest mountain in
a) Africa b) Asia c) Europe d) America
- At the top of Kilimanjaro, there is
a) plant b) water c) sand d) snow

2 Read and complete the text with words from the box:
vets - hurricane - grandparents - weather - storm-chasers

Kamal's parents often went to other countries for their work. Usually, Kamal and his younger sisters stayed at home with their
1) Kamal was very excited because his parents were
2) ! These are people who travel to places where a
3) or another form of extreme 4) is forecast.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Rainbow Bridge is one of the largest natural arches in the world. It is also 200 million years old. It is on Lake Powell in Utah, USA. It is 100 meters tall and it is made of red and brown sandstone. A river eroded a hole in the sandstone and has formed the arch over many, many years. Rainbow Bridge has been a National Monument since 1910. If you want to visit it, you have to take a boat, ride a horse, or walk to it. It is in a very hot desert. So, you should visit it in the spring or in the fall. Don't forget to take your water bottle and a sun hat.

Activities On Unit (2)

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The main idea of the text is "Rainbow"
a) Lake b) Bridge c) Sea d) Country
2. Rainbow Bridge has been a National Monument since
a) 2010 b) 1920 c) 1901 d) 1910
3. You should visit Rainbow Bridge in the _____ or in the fall.
a) winter b) spring c) summer d) autumn

B) Answer the following questions.

4. How tall is Rainbow Bridge?
.....
5. How do you get to Rainbow Bridge?
.....



The Reader

A) Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. Jubari left the wadi. _____
2. The crocodile looked like a dead tree. _____
3. Jubari is a lion. _____
4. There are camels in the Wadi of camels. _____

B) Complete the following sentences:

1. The water was very, very
2. Jubari looked and saw a big animal.

5

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. I have
a) ever b) never c) ago d) since
2. Where
a) do b) have c) did d) are
3. Have you
a) just b) already c) ever d) never
4. She
a) visits b) will visit c) has visited d) visited
5. Where have you
a) be b) being c) been d) were
6. We
a) eat b) have eaten c) will eat d) ate

6

Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. parents - Have - Sudan - to - been - Kamal's - ?
2. got - the - We - festival - for - tickets - have - .
3. countries - Desert - The Sahara - covers - eleven - .

7

Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

A man-made wonder

Guiding elements:

(The Sphinx - Giza - head - body - long - tourists - fantastic)

Activities On Review (1)

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. The Victoria Falls is on the Zambezi
a) Sea b) Lake c) River d) Ocean
2. Every minute, million cubic meters of water falls into a big canyon.
a) three b) four c) five d) six
3. The water has the big canyon.
a) erupted b) stopped c) eroded d) dried
4. The makes a lot of noise as it falls.
a) water b) oil c) juice d) salt

2 Read and complete the text with words from the box:

Archaeologists - man-made - natural - volcano - desert

The Great Pyramid is 1), which means that people made it. 2) can learn a lot about history from buildings like this. We can also learn a lot about 3) wonders of the world such as the Ngorongoro Crater. For example, we know this was once a 4) which erupted millions of years ago.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Have you ever visited a rainforest? In Rwanda, you can see a beautiful rainforest in Volcanoes National Park. You will see a lot of different animals there like monkeys, snakes, and birds. If you are lucky, you might see a gorilla, too. You must be very **quiet** as you walk through the forest. You can't talk loudly to your friends and family. You don't want to scare the gorillas and other animals away.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. In Rwanda you can see a beautiful
a) field b) rainforest c) desert d) storm

2. The underlined word "quiet" means

- a) ugly b) sad c) calm d) bad

3. You shouldn't the gorillas and other animals away

- a) protect b) scare c) love d) help

B) Answer the following questions.

4. What animals can you see in Rwanda?

5. How must you be as you walk through the forest?

4

The Reader

A) Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. Jubari and his mother eat the desert daffodil.
2. Gazelles eat the leaves of the acacia trees.
3. Jubari is going to look for Wadi of the Gazelles.
4. Jubari's mother asked him to forget what she taught him.

B) Complete the following sentences:

1. Jubari thought the mangroves were for gazelles.
2. Jubari's thought the beach was for gazelles.

Review (1)

5

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. I my best friend two hours ago.
a) see b) sees c) have seen d) saw
2. We have to Aswan.
a) be b) were c) being d) been
3. He is healthy he eats fresh vegetables and fruit.
a) and b) but c) so d) because
4. They met a man works in a garden.
a) who b) which c) where d) whose
5. She went to the bakery bought some bread.
a) but b) so c) and d) because
6. This is the school we learn.
a) which b) where c) when d) who

6

Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. natural - The - beautiful - is - in - Africa - world - .
.....
2. ecosystem - The Amazon - an important - is - rainforest - .
.....
3. Island - volcanoes - are - There - many - on Java - .
.....

7

Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

Healthy Habits

Guiding words:

(get up - breakfast - walk - sport - fruit and vegetables - go to bed)

TERM (1) PROJECT (1)

Name: Cilantro

Picture of plant:



Description of plant:

This plant⁽¹⁾ is a herb.

It is usually about 45-50 centimeters tall.

It has a lot of green leaves⁽²⁾. The seeds⁽³⁾ are white or light pink. Bees love them.

The flowers make a lot of small green fruit. Then this fruit turns light brown. These are the seeds which are called coriander.

Where can you find it?

This plant is originally from the area around the Mediterranean Sea. It grows in sunny freshwater⁽⁴⁾ ecosystems.

Conservation status:

Cilantro is not endangered.

How people use this plant:

People use the leaves for lots of different things. For example, you can put them in salads⁽⁵⁾ or soups. People also like the leaves with meat and fish.

People use the seeds in food and in traditional medicine. The ancient Egyptians used coriander for different types of medicine, too.

Why I like this plant:

I like this plant because it is delicious⁽⁶⁾ and useful. My mom puts it in my favorite salad. I also like the smell of the leaves.

1. نبات

3. بخور

5. سلطة

2. أوراق

4. مياه عذبة

6. لذيذ

NON-FICTION READER

INCREDIBLE PLACES AROUND THE WORLD

Read the listen.

There are some amazing places around the world which are very famous. For example, we all know the Sahara Desert, Mount Everest, and the Amazon rainforest. Here we look at some other incredible places which you might not know.

هناك بعض الأماكن المدهشة في جميع أنحاء العالم والتي تكون مشهورة جدا. على سبيل المثال ، نعلم جميعا الصحراء الكبرى وجبل إيفرست وغابات الأمازون المطيرة. هنا نلقي نظرة على بعض الأماكن الرائعة الأخرى التي قد لا تعرفها.

Sharm El Luli - Marsa Alam

شرم اللؤلؤ - مرسى علم

Sharm El Luli beach is one of the most beautiful beaches on the Red Sea. Its clean, blue waters make it very popular with tourists. Divers also love going here because you can see many colorful fish.

You can sometimes see turtles, too. The beach is 60 kilometers south of Marsa Alam.



الشاطئ شرم اللؤلؤ هو واحد من أجمل الشواطئ على البحر الأحمر. مياهه الزرقاء الصافية تجعله يحظى بشعبية كبيرة لدى السياح. يحب الغواصون أيضا الذهاب إليه لأنه يمكنك رؤية العديد من الأسماك الملونة. يمكنك أيضا رؤية السلاحف أيضا. يقع الشاطئ على بعد 60 كيلومترا جنوب مرسى علم.

The Giant's Causeway - Northern Ireland

الجسر العملاق - أيرلندا الشمالية

The Giant's Causeway is in Northern Ireland. It's made of around 40,000 black rock columns which rise from the sea. Scientists have discovered that they formed when a volcano erupted 50-60 million years ago, but some people say that giants made them so they could get to the Scottish Island of Staffa across the sea!



الجسر العملاق في شمال أيرلندا يتكون من 40 ألف من أعمدة الصخور السوداء التي ترتفع من البحر. اكتشف العلماء أنها تشكلت عندما تار بركان قبل 50 أو 60 مليون سنة ، لكن بعض الناس يقولون إن العملاقة صنعوها حتى يتمكنوا من الوصول إلى جزيرة ستافا الاسكتلندية عبر البحر!

Help your child read the text.

The Matterhorn - Switzerland

جبل ماترهورن - سويسرا

Some people say this is the most beautiful mountain in Europe. It's 4,478 meters tall and has the shape of a pyramid with four sides. It's like this because of the way the ice eroded the rock. About 3,000 people climb the mountain every year.



بعض الناس يقولون إن هذا الجبل هو الأكثر جمالا في أوروبا. يبلغ ارتفاعه 4478 مترا على شكل هرم بأربعة جوانب. إنه على هذا الشكل بسبب الطريقة التي كوّن بها الثلج تلك الصخور. يتسلق هذا الجبل حوالي 3000 شخص كل عام.

Waimea Canyon - Hawaii, USA

أخدود ويميا - هاواي، الولايات المتحدة الأمريكية

The islands of Hawaii are part of the USA, although they are more than 7,000 kilometers away in the Pacific Ocean. The Waimea Canyon here is an amazing place. A river has eroded a canyon which is 16 kilometers long and nearly 1,000 meters deep.



جزر هاواي هي جزء من الولايات المتحدة الأمريكية، على الرغم من أنها تبعد أكثر من 7000 كيلومتر في المحيط الهادئ. أخدود ويميا هنا مكان رائع. لقد كوّن نهر الوادي الذي يبلغ طوله 16 كيلومترا وعمق 1000 متر تقريبا.

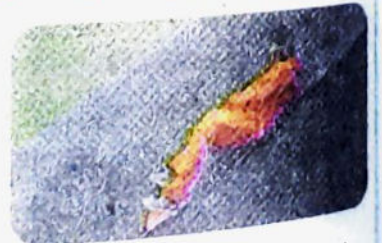
Waimea is the Hawaiian word for red water. It's called this because of the red soil which makes the river look red.

وياهي كلمة هاواي للمياه الحمراء. يطلق عليه هذا بسبب التربة الحمراء التي تجعل النهر يبدو أحمر.

Cerro Negro - Nicaragua, South America

سيرو نيجرو - نيكاراغوا، أمريكا الجنوبية

Cerro Negro is a volcano in Nicaragua, and it has erupted more than 20 times in the last 160 years! However, it has not erupted for more than 20 years, so it not usually dangerous. Its name means black hill and many people climb up its black slopes. When they get to the top, many people surf back down again!



سيرو نيجرو هو بركان في نيكاراغوا، وفاز أكثر من 20 مرة في السنوات الـ 160 الماضية! ومع ذلك، لم يفجر أكثر من 20 عاما، لذلك ليس خطير عادة. اسمها يعني التل الأسود. وكثير من الناس تسلق منحدراتها السوداء. عندما يصلون إلى أعلى، كثير من الناس ينزلون لأسفل مرة أخرى!

NON-FICTION READER

INCREDIBLE BUILDING AROUND THE WORLD

Look and read.

We all know the famous man-made places around the world like the Pyramids of Giza and the Sydney Opera House, but every year, people are always trying to build more and more amazing buildings. Here we look at some other incredible man-made places which you might not know.

نعلم جميعاً الأماكن الشهيرة التي من صنع الإنسان حول العالم مثل أهرامات الجيزة ودار أوبرا سيدني ، ولكن كل عام ، يحاول الناس دائماً بناء المزيد والمزيد من المباني المذهلة. هنا ننظر إلى بعض الأماكن الأخرى المذهلة التي هي من صنع الإنسان والتي قد لا تعرفها.

Bibliotheca Alexandria, Alexandria, Egypt

مكتبة الإسكندرية ، الإسكندرية ، مصر

Opened in 2010, the famous Bibliotheca Alexandria has space for eight million books! The beautiful modern building by the Mediterranean is the same shape as Alexandria's harbor, and has a 32-meter high wall with writing from languages through history.



افتتحت مكتبة الإسكندرية الشهيرة في عام 2010. بها مساحة لثمانية ملايين كتاباً. مبنى المكتبة الحديث على البحر الأبيض المتوسط هو نفس شكل ميناء الإسكندرية. ولها جدار يبلغ ارتفاعه 32 متراً عليه كتابة من اللغات عبر التاريخ.

Habitat 67, Montreal, Canada

Many of us live in tall apartment buildings where we have people living above or below us. But Habitat 67 is very different to most apartment buildings! Here, the 148 apartments look like a big children's puzzle! Build in 1967, its apartments all have a terrace with amazing views over the city.



مبنى هاييتات 67 ، مونتريال ، كندا

يعيش الكثير منا في عمارات سكنية طويلة حيث يعيش فوقنا وتحتنا الناس. لكن المبنى يختلف كثيرا عن معظم العمارات السكنية! هنا، 148 شقة تبدو وكأنها أحذية أو لغز كبير للأطفال! تم بناء جميع شققها في عام 1967 ، وتحتوي على تراس مع إطلالات مذهلة على المدينة.

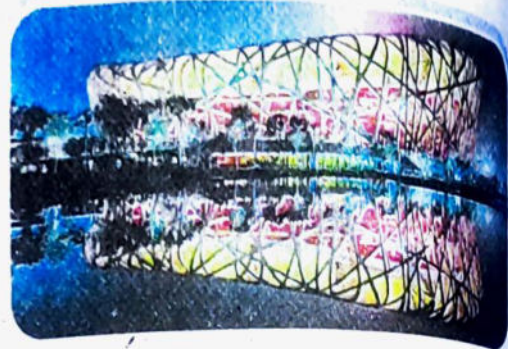
Beijing National Stadium, China

الستاد بكين الوطني ، الصين

There are many amazing sports stadiums around the world, but not many are designed by artists!

Chinese artist Ai Weiwei designed the Beijing National Stadium for the 2008 Olympic Games with some architects,

and now 80,000 people can visit it for sports events. Most people call it the Birds Nest because it looks like a place where birds lay their eggs!



هناك العديد من الاستادات الرياضية المدهشة في جميع أنحاء العالم ، ولكن ليس الكثير منها مصمم من قبل الفنانين! صمم الفنان الصيني آي ويوي استاد بكين للألعاب الأولمبية 2008 مع بعض المهندسين المعماريين، والآن يمكن أن يجتمع فيه 80 ألف شخص لمشاهدة الأحداث الرياضية. يسميه معظم الناس عش الطيور لأنه يبدو وكأنه مكان تضع فيه الطيور بيضها!

Institute for Sound and Vision, the Netherlands

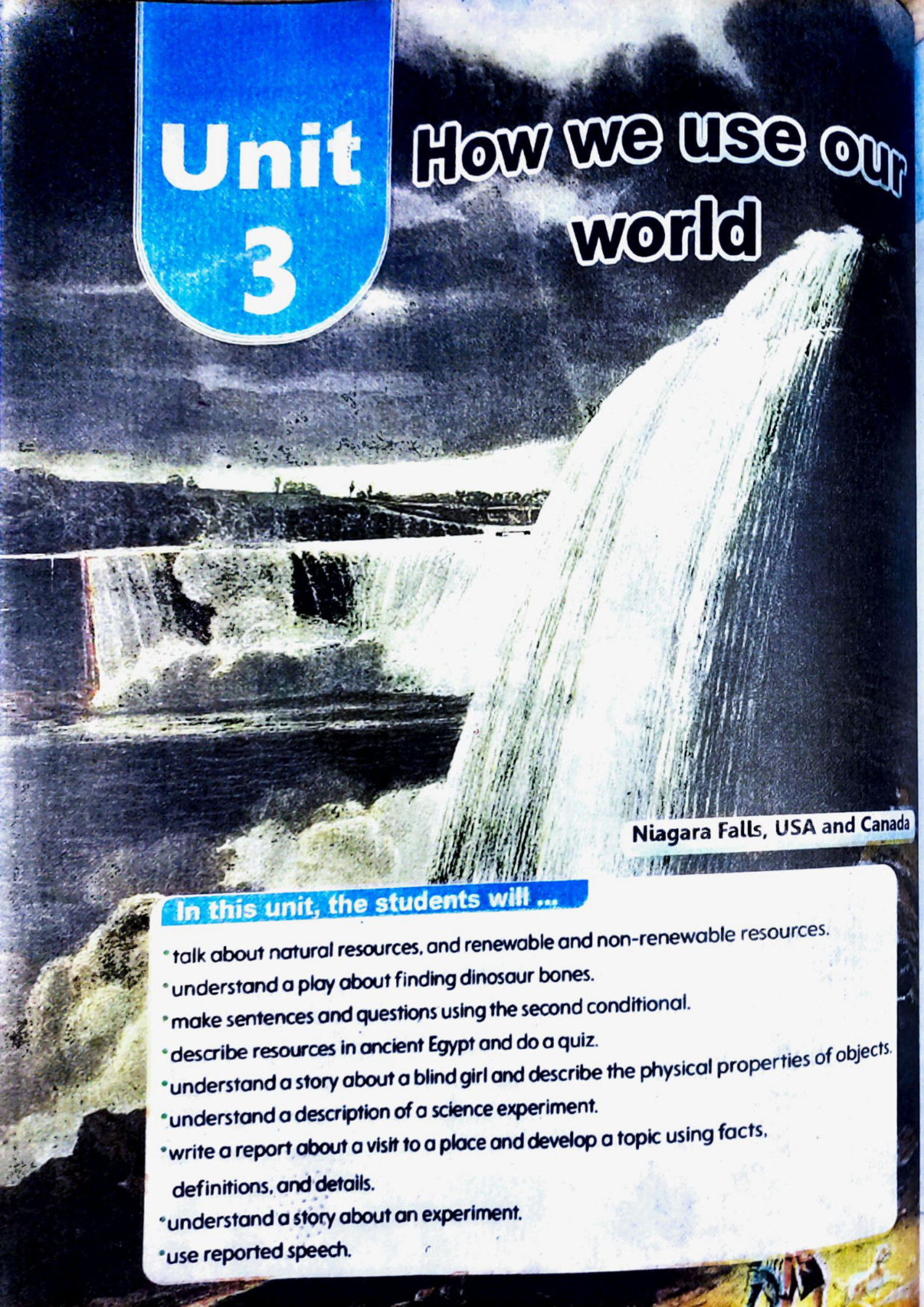
معهد الصوت والرؤية ، هولندا

The architects of this museum like color! The building of the Institute for Sound and Vision is made of hundreds of colored pieces of glasses. Opened in 2006, the museum teaches you all about the media, including television, radio , newspapers and social media.



يحب المهندسون المعماريون لهذا المتحف الألوان! إن بناء معهد الصوت والرؤية مصنوع من مئات من قطع الزجاج الملون. افتتح في عام 2006، المتحف يعلمك كل شيء عن وسائل الإعلام ، بما في ذلك التلفزيون، الإذاعة والصحف ووسائل التواصل الاجتماعي.

Theme (2) Myself and others



Unit 3

How we use our world

Niagara Falls, USA and Canada

In this unit, the students will ...

- talk about natural resources, and renewable and non-renewable resources.
- understand a play about finding dinosaur bones.
- make sentences and questions using the second conditional.
- describe resources in ancient Egypt and do a quiz.
- understand a story about a blind girl and describe the physical properties of objects.
- understand a description of a science experiment.
- write a report about a visit to a place and develop a topic using facts, definitions, and details.
- understand a story about an experiment.
- use reported speech.

Lesson (1)

NATURAL RESOURCES

Look, listen and read.



methane (gas)

غاز الميثان



stone (solid)

حجر



soil (solid)

تربة



cloud (gas)

سحابة



waterfall (liquid)

شلال



water (liquid)

ماء

States of matter

حالات المادة

solid

صلبة



liquid

سائلة



gas

غازية



Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Natural Resources

الموارد الطبيعية

Unit (3)

Renewable

متجددة

the sun	الشمس
wind	الرياح
water	الماء

Non-renewable

غير متجددة

coal	فحم
gas	غاز
metal	معدن
stone	حجر
wood	خشب
soil	التربة الزراعية

Extra vocabulary

Marsa Alam	مدينة مرسى علم	materials	مواد	pan	البرغوت
journey	رحلة	mine	منجم	sign	علامة
freezer	جهاز التجميد (فريزر)	object	شيء	state	دولة
holiday	إجازة	shape	شكل	steam	بخار
electricity	الكهرباء	pale color	لون باهت	gold	ذهب
difference	اختلاف - فرق	container	وعاء	candy	حلوى

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present	Past	P.P
melt	يذوب melted	melted
boil	يغلي boiled	boiled
turn	يتحول turned	turned
pick up	يلتقط picked up	picked up
heat	يُسخن heated	heated
burn	يحرق - يحترق burned / burnt	burned/ burnt
pour	يصب poured	poured
flow	يتدفق - يسيل flowed	flowed

Lesson (1)

Irregular verbs

Present	Past	P.P
freeze	froze	frozen
build	built	built
understand	understood	understood

Definitions

natural resources

things we can use from nature, like wood and soil

مصادر طبيعية

mine

a place where we get raw materials from the ground

منجم

raw materials

things that come from the ground, like gold and coal

مواد خام

renewable

means we can get more after we use it

متجددة

non-renewable

means we can't use it again

غير متجددة

a solid

has a fixed shape

مادة صلبة

a liquid

doesn't have a fixed shape and it flows

مادة سائلة

a gas

doesn't have a fixed shape and you can't see it

غاز

Important expressions and prepositions

look out of

ينظر من

fixed shape

شكل ثابت

turn from to

يتحول من ... إلى

fossil fuels

وقود جفري

journey to

رحلة إلى

Sukari gold mine

منجم السكري للذهب

solar energy

الطاقة الشمسية

get warm

يسخن

Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Listen and read.

Salma's journey to Marsa Alam

رحلة سلمى إلى مرسى علم

It's summer and Salma and her family are going to Marsa Alam for a holiday. Salma looks out of the car window and sees a sign to the Sukari gold mine. "What's a mine, mom?" she asks. "It's a place where we get raw materials from the ground, like gold and coal."



في الصيف، وستذهب سلمى وعائلتها إلى مرسى علم لقضاء عطلة. سلمى تنظر من نافذة السيارة وترى لافتة لمنجم السكري للذهب. تسأل أمها قائلة "ماذا يعني منجم؟". تقول الأم "إنه مكان نحصل فيه على المواد الخام من الأرض، مثل الذهب والفحم".

"Are raw materials the same as natural resources?" asks Salma.

"Yes, usually," says Mom. "Natural resources are things we can use from nature, like wood and soil. We use them to make the things we need. For example, we use wood to make tables, stone to build houses, and plants for food. The sun is a natural resource because it gives us solar energy to make electricity."

تسأل سلمى "هل المواد الخام هي نفس الموارد الطبيعية؟". تقول الأم "نعم، عادة الموارد الطبيعية هي أشياء يمكننا استخدامها من الطبيعة، مثل الخشب والتراب. نحن نستخدمها لصنع الأشياء التي نحتاجها. على سبيل المثال، نستخدم الخشب لصنع الطاولات والحجر لبناء المنازل والنباتات للطعام. الشمس مورد طبيعي لأنها نطيقنا الطاقة الشمسية لتوليد الكهرباء".

"Our teacher says that coal is non-renewable, is that right?"

"Yes," says Mom. "Some natural resources like solar energy are renewable - this means that we can get more of the resource naturally after we use it. But some natural resources are non-renewable. When we burn fossil fuels such as coal and gas, we can't use them again."

تقول سلمى "يقول معلمنا إن الفحم غير متجدد؟ هل هذا صحيح؟". تقول الأم "نعم بعض الموارد الطبيعية مثل الطاقة الشمسية متجددة وهذا يعني أنه يمكننا الحصول على المزيد من هذه الموارد بشكل طبيعي بعد استخدامها. لكن بعض الموارد الطبيعية غير قابلة للتجديد فعندما نحرق الوقود الحفري مثل الفحم والغاز، لا يمكننا استخدامه مرة أخرى".

Lesson (1)

"What's the difference between coal and gas?" asks Salma.

"Coal is a solid," says Mom. "You can pick up a solid object, like your bag. It has a fixed shape. You can't usually see gases, although some have a pale color. Gases move and change shape." "What about liquids, Mom?"

"Liquids don't have a fixed shape. You can't pick up a liquid which isn't in a container. Liquids can flow- for example, you can pour water into a cup."



تسأل سلمي أمها "ما هو الفرق بين الفحم والغاز". تقول الأم "الفحم صلب". "يمكنك التقاط جسم صلب، مثل حقيبتك. لها شكل ثابت. لا يمكنك عادة رؤية الغازات، على الرغم من أن بعضها له لون شاحب. تتحرك الغازات وتغير شكلها." تقول سلمي "ماذا عن السوائل يا أمي؟" تقول الأم "السوائل ليس لها شكل ثابت. لا يمكنك التقاط سائل غير موجود في وعاء. يمكن أن تتدفق السوائل على سبيل المثال، يمكنك صب الماء في كوب."

Did you know that some solids, liquids, and gases can change from one state to another?" says Dad.

"If you boil liquid water, it turns to steam which is a gas. If you freeze liquid water, it turns to ice which is a solid. When ice melts, it becomes a liquid again!"



"Yes, we learned that at school!" says Salma. "But I understand it better now. Thanks, Mom and Dad!"

يسأل داب "هل تعلمي أن بعض المواد الصلبة والسوائل والغازات يمكن أن تتغير من حالة إلى أخرى؟". إذا قممت بغلي الماء السائل، فإنه يتحول إلى بخار وهو غاز. إذا قممت بتجميد الماء السائل، فإنه يتحول إلى ثلج صلب. عندما يذوب الثلج، يصبح سائلاً مرة أخرى." تقول سلمي "نعم، تعلمنا ذلك في المدرسة!" "لكنني أفهم ذلك بشكل أفضل الآن. شكراً، أمي وأبي!"

General Activities

الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- Salma's family are going to for a holiday.
a) Luxor b) Aswan c) Marsa Alam d) Tanta
- Salma looks out of the window.
a) car b) bus c) taxi d) train
- Salma sees a sign to the Sukari mine.
a) silver b) gold c) bronze d) metal
- Mine is a place where we get materials.
a) gas b) solid c) raw d) row

2 Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

mine - Marsa Alam - Can - What - When

- Mona : Hello, Salma. Where did you go for a holiday?
 Salma : I went to 1)
 Mona : 2) did you see?
 Salma : I saw the Sukari gold 3)
 Mona : Did you enjoy your holiday?
 Salma : Yes, very much.
 Mona : 4) I go with you next time?
 Salma : Yes, you can.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- Solids, liquids, and gases can change from one to another.
a) state b) star c) base d) type
- When we water, it turns into steam.
a) freeze b) boil c) melt d) drink
- A flo
a) liquid b) gas c) solid d) stone
- If you water, it turns into
a) burn b) boil c) heat d) freeze

Lesson (1)

5. Steam is a
a) solid b) gas c) liquid d) water
6. Ice is a
a) solid b) stone c) liquid d) gas
7. You can pick up a
a) liquid b) gas c) solid d) steam
8. Solids have a shape.
a) changed b) fixed c) running d) melted
9. When you freeze water, it turns from a liquid to a
a) gas b) solid c) steam d) cloud
10. Gold and coal are materials.
a) raw b) row c) liquid d) gas
11. We use to make tables.
a) paper b) cotton c) wood d) water
12. We can burn fuels like coal and gas.
a) fossil b) fast c) gold d) silver
13. don't have a fixed shape.
a) Solids b) Gases c) Tables d) Chairs

4 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

stream - boiled - froze - ice - steam

In science class today, our teacher put some water in a pan. She heated the water until it 1) Some of the water turned to 2) Then we poured the water into a container, and put it in a freezer. The water 3) and turned to 4)

5 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. fixed - **A solid** - shape - has - a - .
2. solar - **The sun** - us - gives - energy - .
3. boil - you - **When** - water, - turns - it - steam - to - .

6

Read the following text and answer the questions.

A mine is a place where we get raw materials from the ground, like gold and coal. Natural resources are things we can use from nature, like wood and soil. We use them to make the things we need. For example, we use wood to make tables, stone to build houses, and plants for food. The sun is a natural resource because it gives us solar energy to make electricity.

Some natural resources like solar energy are renewable - this means that we can get more of the resource naturally after we use it. But some natural resources are non-renewable. When we burn fossil fuels such as coal and gas, we can't use them again.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The main idea of the text is about

- a) natural resources b) the sun c) stone d) energy is a raw material

2.

- a) Gold b) Water c) Ice d) Wind resource

3. The sun is a

- a) normal b) natural c) nature d) wind

B) Answer the following questions.

4. What does the underlined pronoun "it" refer to?

5. Why are fossil fuels non-renewable?

7

Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

Natural resources

Guiding elements:

(renewable - non-renewable - sun - wind - fossil fuels - solar energy)

Lesson (2)

LANGUAGE



shovel
جاروف



dig
يجفر



hole
حفرة



bones
عظام

Extra vocabulary

mountain

جبل gazelle

غزال

dinosaur

ديناصور weekend

عطلة نهاية الأسبوع

expert

خبير skeleton

هيكل عظمي

archaeologists

علماء الآثار normal

عادي

real

حقيقي enough

كاف

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs افعال منتظمة

Present	Past	P.P
imagine	يتخيل / يتصور imagine d	imagine d
decide	يقرر decide d	decide d
plan	يخطط plan ned	plan ned
stay	يقيم / يبقى stay ed	stay ed
miss	يفتقد / يفوته miss ed	miss ed
move	يتحرك / ينتقل move d	move d

Irregular verbs افعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	P.P
dig	يجفر dug	dug
tell	يخبر told	told
give	يعطي gave	given

Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Important expressions and prepositions

on the ground

take home

on the sign

for a day

interested in

Egyptian Geological Museum

على الأرض

ياخذ ... للمنزل

على اللافتة

لمدة يوم

مهتم بـ

المتحف الجيولوجي المصري

talk to

plan to

listen to

move to

give to

look for

يتكلم مع

يخطط لـ

يسمع إلى

ينتقل إلى

يعطي لـ

يبحث عن

Read and listen to the play.

Scene 1: Inside a room in Grandpa's house

المشهد 1: داخل غرفة في منزل الجد

Grandpa : What are you doing tomorrow, children?
الجد: ماذا ستفعلون غدا يا أطفال؟Donia : Tarek and I are going into the mountains
with Dad.
دنيا: سأذهب أنا وطارق إلى الجبال مع أبي.Grandpa : Really? When I was a boy, people told
me that there were dinosaur bones in the mountains.
الجد: حقا؟ عندما كنت صبيا، أخبرني الناس أن هناك عظام ديناصور في الجبال.

Tarek : Real dinosaur bones?

Grandpa : I think so. I never saw them, but my friend Ali was digging a hole
there and he found some bones.
الجد: أظن ذلك. لم أرهم قط، لكن صديقي علي كان يحفر حفرة هناك ووجد بعض العظام.Tarek : Wow! Donia, let's take a shovel when we go to the mountains.
We might find dinosaur bones too!
طارق: واو! دنيا، لنأخذ جاروفا عندما نذهب إلى الجبال. قد نجد عظام الديناصورات أيضا!

المشهد 2: في السيارة

Scene 2: In the car

Tarek : What would you do if we found dinosaur bones in the mountains,
Donia?
طارق: ماذا ستفعلين إذا وجدنا عظام الديناصورات في الجبال يا دنيا؟Donia : If we found dinosaur bones, I would take them home. If there
were a lot of dinosaur bones, I would give one to Grandpa. He's
very interested in dinosaurs!

Help your child read and listen to the play.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويستمع إلى المسرحية.

Lesson 3
إذا وجدنا عظام ديناصور، فسنأخذها إلى المنزل. إذا كان هناك الكثير من عظام الديناصورات، فسأعطي واحدة للمجد. إنه مهم جدًا بالديناصورات!

Hmm. I don't know. I think we should call an expert. If I found dinosaur bones, I would call the museum and tell them.

تارقي: همم. لا أعرف. أعتقد أننا يجب أن نتصل بخبير. إذا وجدت عظام ديناصور، فسأتصل بالمتحف وأخبرهم.
That's a good idea. And if the archaeologists from the museum came, maybe they would find a whole dinosaur skeleton.

Donia: هذه فكرة جيدة. وإذا جاء علماء الآثار من المتحف، فربما يجدون هيكل عظمي كامل لديناصور.
And if the skeleton went in the museum, they would put our names on the sign. It would say "Found by Donia and Tarek."

تارقي: وإذا وضع الهيكل العظمي في المتحف، فإنهم سيضعون أسمائنا على اللافتة. فقد يكون مكتوبًا عليها "وُجِدَتْ من قِبل دنيا وتارقي."

Donia: Wow! That's cool.

تارقي: واو! هذا رائع.

3: In the mountains

المشهد 3: في الجبال

Donia: Here's the shovel. Let's start digging.
Tarek digs in the ground.

تارقي: ها هو الجاروف. لنبدأ الحفر.
تارقي يحفر في الأرض.

Tarek: Look! I've found a bone, Donia! Is it a dinosaur bone?

تارقي: انظري! لقد وجدت عظمة يا دنيا! هل هي عظم ديناصور؟

Donia: I don't think they're heavy enough to be dinosaur bones. They're just animal bones... Maybe a goat or gazelle.

دنيا: لا أعتقد أنها ثقيلة بما يكفي لتكون عظام ديناصور. إنها مجرد عظام حيوانات... ربما غزالة أو غزال.

Tarek: You're right. I've never seen a dinosaur bone in real life. Only photos!

تارقي: أنت على حق. لم أر قط عظم ديناصور في الحياة الحقيقية. صور فقط!

Dad: Well, why don't we visit the Egyptian Geological Museum in Cairo soon?

والد: حسنا، لماذا لا نزرع المتحف المصري الجيولوجي في القاهرة قريباً؟

Donia: If we go to the museum, we'll see really big dinosaur skeletons.

دنيا: إذا ذهبنا إلى المتحف، فسنرى هياكل عظمية كبيرة للديناصورات.

Tarek: If we see real dinosaur skeletons, we'll know what to look for next time. Can we go tomorrow, Dad?

تارقي: إذا رأينا هياكل عظمية حقيقية للديناصورات، فسنعرف ما الذي نبحث عنه في المرة القادمة.
هل يمكننا الذهاب غداً يا أبي؟

Conditional (If)

(لو / إذا) الشرطية

First Conditional

Form:

If + present simple , will + inf.

Usage:

We use the first conditional:

⇒ To describe events which will probably happen in the future.

سنستخدم الحالة الشرطية الأولى لوصف أحداث من المحتمل أن تحدث في المستقبل.

e.g. If we go to the museum, we will see dinosaur bones.

We will see dinosaur bones if we go to the museum.

Second Conditional

Form:

If + past simple , would + inf.

Usage:

We use the second conditional:

⇒ To describe events we imagine, but probably won't happen.

سنستخدم الحالة الشرطية الثانية لوصف أحداث نتخيلها ولكن من المحتمل ألا تحدث.

e.g. If it snowed in October, I would be very surprised.

I would be very surprised if it snowed in October.

Note:

⇒ The comma is important when we start with (If).

Lesson (2)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1

1. If I saw a lion in the street, I
a) will b) would c) can d) may be afraid.
2. If it in October, I would be very surprised.
a) snow b) snows c) snowed d) snowing
3. If we a fire, my parents would call the fire service.
a) see b) sees c) saw d) seeing
4. If we go to the museum, we see really big dinosaur skeletons.
a) would b) could c) might d) will
5. If I dinosaur bones, I would call the museum and tell them.
a) find b) found c) finds d) finding
6. If I found a phone on the ground, I take it to the police.
a) will b) may c) can d) would
7. If I a famous person, I wouldn't know what to say.
a) meet b) meets c) met d) meeting
8. If we go to the shopping mall on Saturday, I buy a new book.
a) will b) would c) could d) might
9. If she much money, she'll help the poor.
a) have b) has c) had d) having
10. We play tennis if we had free time.
a) will b) can c) would d) may

2

Read and complete with the correct form.

1. If I have a lot of money, I (would) buy a villa.
2. If I (don't) play well, I wouldn't win the match.
3. If she (take) medicine, she will recover.
4. If I went to the park, I (will) meet my friends.
5. I won't (catches) the train if I don't run.
6. If you eat healthy food, you (will) get ill.
7. If I (have) enough time, I'd play with my brother.

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

1 Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

digging - shovel - mountains - bones - spoon

- Grandpa : What are you doing tomorrow, children?
 Donia : We're going into the 1) with Dad
 Grandpa : Really? When I was a boy, they told me that there were
 dinosaur 2) in the mountains
 Tarek : Real dinosaur bones?
 Grandpa : I think so. I never saw them, but my friend Ali was 3)
 a hole there and he found some bones.
 Tarek : Wow! Donia, let's take a 4)
 when we go to the mountain.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- There were dinosaur in the mountain
 a) robots b) bones c) tunes d) phones
- My friend Ali was a hole and he found some bones
 a) playing b) drinking c) digging d) reading
- Grandpa is very interested dinosaur
 a) on b) in c) at d) by
- If we go to the museum, we'll see really big dinosaur
 a) cycles b) skeletons c) skill d) sky
- We use a to dig
 a) towel b) shovel c) spoon d) ruler
- I play games with my friends if I see them in the park today
 a) would b) will c) could d) might
- If I a lot of money, I would build a home for animals
 a) have b) has c) had d) having
- If I visited Cairo, I go to the Egyptian Geological Museum
 a) will b) would c) may d) can
- If it was very hot, I would at home
 a) stay b) stays c) staying d) stayed

Lesson (2)

3

Read the following text and answer the questions.

Last week I went on a school trip to the Egyptian Geological Museum in Cairo. I went with my classmates. We learnt a lot there. We saw really big dinosaur skeletons. The museum is fantastic. The guide told us interesting information about dinosaurs. We spent a nice time there. We took a lot of photos. We came back home at eight o'clock.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. We went on a school trip
a) yesterday b) tomorrow c) last week d) last month
2. We came back home at o'clock.
a) 5 b) 7 c) 6 d) 8
3. I went to the Egyptian Geological Museum with my
a) friends b) classmates c) family d) parents

B) Answer the following questions.

4. What did you see there?
5. How is the museum?

4

Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. going - They - are - the - to - mountains - .
2. would - do - What - you - you - if - a bike - had - ?
3. bones - I - some - dinosaur - found - .

5

Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

A trip to the Egyptian Geological Museum

Guiding questions:

- Where did you go? - How did you go?
- Who did you go with? - What did you see?
- How did you find it? - When did you come back home?

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة...

Lesson (3)

RESOURCES IN ANCIENT EGY

Key vocabulary

economy	الاقتصاد	fertile
flax	نبات الكتان (خيوط الكتان)	linen
bend	يثني - يلوي	papyrus

Extra vocabulary

mud	طين	successful
agriculture	الزراعة	medicine
jewelry	مجوهرات	mines
copper	نحاس	tools
cooking pots	أواني الطهي	limestone
temples	معابد	hieroglyphics
forests	غابات	problems
bricks	قوالب طوب	the Eastern Desert
hives	خلايا النحل	The Nile Delta

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs

	Present	Past	P.P
flood		يفيض flood ed	flood ed
turn		يتحول turn ed	turn ed
die		يموت die d	die d
discover		يكشف discover ed	discover ed
transport		ينقل transport ed	transport ed

Lesson (3)

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present

Past

P.P

sell	يبيع	sold	sold
keep	يحفظ	kept	kept
build	يبني	built	built
bend	يثني - يالوي	bent	bent

Important expressions and prepositions

work at	يعمل في	such as	مثل
as well as	بالإضافة إلى	useful in	مفيد في
at first	في البداية	get out of	يخرج من
take from	يأخذ من		

Listen and read.

Hello, my name's Mr Taha and I work at the museum. I know your class is learning about natural resources, so I'm here today to talk about resources in ancient Egypt!

مرحباً، اسمي السيد "طه" وأنا أعمل في المتحف. أعلم أن صفك يتعلم عن الموارد الطبيعية، لذلك أنا هنا اليوم للحديث عن الموارد في مصر القديمة!

Did you know that ancient Egypt was very successful because it had good natural resources? Agriculture was a very important part of the economy of ancient Egypt. The Nile flooded every year and made the soil fertile. Farmers grew lots of different crops, such as cotton and rice.



Mr Taha

هل تعلم أن مصر القديمة كانت ناجحة للغاية لأنها كانت تمتلك موارد طبيعية جيدة؟ كانت الزراعة جزءاً مهماً جداً من اقتصاد مصر القديمة. فاض النيل كل عام وجعل التربة خصبة. قام المزارعون بزراعة الكثير من المحاصيل المختلفة، مثل القطن والأرز.

Do any of you know what flax is? This tall plant has blue flowers. The plant turns yellow after the flowers die. Flax was important in ancient Egypt. People used it to make linen for clothes, as well as for strong rope.



هل تعلم ما هو نبات الكتان؟ هذا النبات الطويل له زهور زرقاء. يتحول النبات إلى اللون الأصفر بعد موت الأزهار. الكتان كان مهماً في مصر القديمة. استخدمه الناس لصنع الملابس، وكذلك لصنع حبل قوي.

Salt was also a very important resource in ancient Egypt, and they sold it to other countries, too. People used salt to keep food fresh. It was also useful in medicine and agriculture. Some of the lakes in the Nile Delta had lots of salt which people could take to use or sell.



المنح أيضا موردا مهما جدا في مصر القديمة، وباعوه إلى بلدان أخرى أيضا، استخدم الناس الملح للحفاظ على الطعام. كان مفيدا أيضا في الطب والزراعة. بعض البحيرات في دلتا النيل بها الكثير من الملح الذي يمكن أن يأخذه الناس مستخدمه أو بيعه.

Pictures of life in ancient Egypt often show jewelry and beautiful objects made from gold! We think they discovered gold about 5,000 years ago.

لما تظهر صور الحياة في مصر القديمة مجوهرات وأشياء جميلة مصنوعة من الذهب! نعتقد أنهم اكتشفوا الذهب منذ 5,000 عام.

At first, they found it in rivers, then they made mines to get more out of the ground. Archaeologists have discovered some ancient gold mines in the Eastern Desert.



ابتداء، وجدوه في الأنهار، ثم استخدموا المناجم للحصول على المزيد من الأرض. اكتشف علماء الآثار بعض مناجم الذهب القديمة في الصحراء الشرقية.

Copper was another very important metal. It was easy to bend, and people used it to make tools, cooking pots, and knives, as well as jewelry. We can see a lot of these objects today in Egyptian museums.



النحاس معدن آخر مهما جدا. كان من السهل ثنيه وتشكيله، واستخدمه الناس في صنع الأدوات وأواني الطهي والسكاكين. يمكننا أن نرى الكثير من هذه الأشياء اليوم في المتاحف المصرية.

Finally, stones and rocks were a useful natural resource in ancient Egypt, too. Because there were lots of rocks such as limestone, the ancient Egyptians could build the pyramids, and many other big and important buildings and temples. Boats on the Nile transported some of the stones across Egypt to the important cities.



في النهاية كانت الحجارة والصخور مورد طبيعي مفيد في مصر القديمة. نظرا لوجود الكثير من الصخور مثل الحجر الجيري، كان بإمكان المصريين القدماء بناء الأهرامات والعديد من المباني والمعابد الكبيرة المهمة الأخرى. نقلت القوارب في نهر النيل بعض الحجارة عبر مصر إلى المدن المهمة.

Lesson (3)

How much do you know about other natural resources in ancient Egypt? Do the quiz.

كم تعرف عن الموارد الطبيعية الأخرى في مصر القديمة؟ قم بحل اللغز.

WHAT IS IT?

1 Egyptians used this to make medicine. It was very important for helping with problems with the skin or eyes. There are hieroglyphics in ancient temples which show people keeping bees.

استخدم المصريون هذا لصنع الدواء. كان من المهم جدا للمساعدة في مشاكل الجلد أو العيون. هناك كتابات هيرغليفية في المعابد القديمة التي تظهر للناس تربية النحل.

- a salt b honey c milk

2 People used this strong plant to make things such as baskets and sandals, but the most important thing they made from it was paper. The ancient Egyptians made some of the first books in the world using this.

استخدم الناس هذا النبات القوي لصنع أشياء مثل السلال والصنادل، لكن أهم شيء صنعوه منه كان الورق. قدم المصريون القدماء بعض الكتب الأولى في العالم باستخدام هذا.

- a papyrus b dates c flax

3 This natural resource wasn't easy to find in ancient Egypt because there weren't many forests. People could get it from other countries.

لم يكن من السهل العثور على هذا المورد الطبيعي في مصر القديمة لأنه لم يكن هناك الكثير من الغابات. يمكن للناس الحصول عليه من بلدان أخرى.

- a stone b sand c wood

4 People in ancient Egypt used this to build houses and other buildings. They took it from the Nile when it was soft and made it into square bricks. These were hard and strong when they dried.

استخدم الناس في مصر القديمة هذا لبناء المنازل والمباني الأخرى. أخذوه من النيل عندما كان لينًا وصنعوا منه طوب مربع الشكل. يصبح الطوب صلب وقوي عندما يجف.

- a mud b gold c coal

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. _____ used honey to make medicine.
a) Egyptians b) French c) British d) Chinese
2. Honey was very _____.
a) unimportant b) important c) useless d) harmful
3. Honey helped with the problems of skin and _____.
a) legs b) hands c) eyes d) heads
4. People in Ancient Egypt kept _____.
a) ducks b) hens c) geese d) bees

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Mr Taha works _____ the museum.
a) on b) of c) by d) at
2. Ancient Egypt was very _____ because it had good natural resources.
a) success b) successful c) succeed d) succeeding
3. Agriculture was a very important part of _____.
a) colony b) economy c) economic d) industry
4. The Nile flooded every year and made the soil _____.
a) bad b) fertile c) weak d) ugly
5. People used _____ to make linen.
a) flax b) papyrus c) cotton d) rice
6. People used salt to keep food _____.
a) bad b) sad c) fresh d) old
7. Copper is a metal. It is easy to _____.
a) flow b) bend c) build d) eat
8. People put bees in houses called _____.
a) knives b) wives c) hives d) lives
9. Honey was used to make _____.
a) medicine b) plants c) tools d) wax
10. People in ancient Egypt used _____ to build houses and other buildings.
a) mud b) gold c) coal d) flax

Lesson (3)

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

People kept bees to make honey in ancient Egypt over 4,500 years ago. Honey was an expensive but important natural resource. Everyone liked it because you could use it for many different things. People used it to make food taste sweet. They used it as a medicine, too. If you cut yourself, you could put honey on the cut.

People made long, round houses out of clay for the bees. Then they put the clay bee houses, called hives, on top of each other in the shape of a pyramid. Every few months, they moved the hives along the Nile in boats so that the bees could find new flowers.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- The main idea of the text is the
a) pyramid b) honey c) money d) Nile
- Bees live in houses called
a) hotels b) flats c) hives d) holes
- Honey wasn't
a) expensive b) cheap c) important d) useful

B) Answer the following questions.

- How did people use honey as a medicine?
- Why did people move the hives along the Nile?

4 Order the words to make correct sentences.

- flooded - the soil - The Nile - fertile - made - and - .
- used - flax - People - make - to - linen - .
- Egypt - very - Ancient - successful - was - .

5 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

Honey

Guiding elements:

(bees - food - sweet - medicine - cut - flowers)

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Key vocabulary

soft	ناعم / لين / طري	mass
hard	قاس / جامد	light
sticky	لاصق / لزج	heavy
rough	خشش	comfortable
gas	غاز	odor
liquid	سائل	texture
solid	صلب	blind

كتلة

خفيف

ثقل

نوع

رائحة

لمس / نسيج / قماش

اعمى / كفيف

Extra vocabulary

excited	متحمس / مسرور	stone
lovely	جميل	smooth
fingers	أصابع اليد	amazing
object	شيء	kitchen
wooden	خشبي	honey
carefully	بحرص / بعناية	kind

حجر

ناعم / أملس

منهل

مطبخ

عسل

نوع

Definitions

blind	can't see
odor	the smell of something
mass	describes how heavy something is
texture	this is the feel of something

اعمى / كفيف

رائحة

كتلة

اللمس

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs

Present	Past	P.P
arrive	يصل arrived	arrived
pick	يلتقط picked	picked
close	يغلق closed	closed
touch	يلمس touched	touched

Present

Past

P.P

mean
come
say
feel
know
smell
bend

يعني / يقصد meant

يأتي came

يقول said

يشعر / له ملمس felt

يعرف knew

يشم smelt

يثني - يلوي bent

meant

come

said

felt

known

smelt

bent

Important expressions and prepositions

arrive from
welcome to
walk around
sounds fun
get from
ping-pong ball

يصل من ... good at

مرحباً بك في learn from

يتجول حول ask for

يبدو ممتناً play with

يُحضر من put down

كرة تنس الطاولة

جيد في

يتعلم ... من

يطلب

يلعب مع

يضع

Listen and read.

Mona is excited because her cousin Heba has just arrived from Alexandria. Heba is blind, which means she cannot see.

منى سعيدة لأن ابنة عمها هبة وصلت للنو من الإسكندرية. هبة كفيفة، والذي يعني أنها لا تستطيع الرؤية.



"Hello, Heba. Come in!" says Mona. "Welcome to my house. This is the living room." Heba walks around the room and feels some of the things. "It's a lovely room," she says. "How do you know?" asks Mona.

تقول منى "مرحباً هبة، ادخلي". "مرحباً بكم في بيتي. هذه هي غرفة المعيشة." تتجول هبة في الغرفة وتلمس بعض الأشياء. تقول: "إنها غرفة جميلة." تسألها منى "كيف يمكنك أن تعرفي؟".

"Well, when you run your fingers over an object, you can feel its texture. So, I know that you have soft, comfortable chairs. And I like your old

Help your child read a story about a blind girl.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ قصة عن فتاة كفيفة.

wooden table." "How do you know it's old and wooden?"

"The old wood is rough, and it has an odor, too. That means I can smell the wood.

حسنًا ، عندما تلمس أصابعك على شيء ما ، يمكنك أن تشعر بملامسته. لذلك ، أعلم أن لديك كرسي ناعمة ومريحة. وأنا أحب طاولتك الخشبية القديمة. تسألها مني "كيف يمكنك أن تعرفي أنها قديمة وخشبية؟" وتجيب هبة "الخشب القديم خشن وله رائحة أيضا. هذا يعني أنني أستطيع شم رائحة الخشب.

"Heba picks up a ping pong ball. "And I know this is a ball and not a stone because of its mass. It's light, but a stone is heavy,"

"You're amazing, Heba!" says Mona. "I'd love to learn more."



هبة تلتقط كرة تنس الطاولة. "وأنا أعرف أن هذا كرة وليست حجرا بسبب كتلتها. إنها خفيفة ، لكن الحجر ثقيل." تقول مني "أنت مذهلة يا هبة!" "أحب تعلم المزيد."

"We can play a game. First, I'll ask Aunt Leila to get me some things from the kitchen. You mustn't look! Then, close your eyes. Can you tell me what the things are?"

"That sounds fun!" says Mona's mother. She puts some things down on the table.

يمكننا أن نلعب لعبة. أولا ، سأطلب من العممة ليلى أن تحضر لي بعض الأشياء من المطبخ. يجب أن لا تنظري! ثم أغمض عينيك. هل يمكنك أن تخبريني ما هي الأشياء؟" تقول والدة مني "هذا يبدو ممتعا". إنها تضع بعض الأشياء على الطاولة.

Mona closes her eyes. First, she picks up a soft banana. "It's not hard," says Mona. "I can bend it, and it has an odor. Is it a banana?"

تغلق مني عينيها. أولا ، تلتقط موزة ناعمة. تقول مني: "نعم الأمر صعبا". "يمكنني ثنيها ، ولها رائحة. هل هي موزة؟"

"Yes!" says Heba. "Now touch this carefully "Oh, it's soft and smooth, and it's sticky. Is it honey?" asks Mona. "That's right! You're good at this game, Mona!"

تقول هبة "نعم!". "الآن الممسى هذا بعناية" تقول مني "أوه، إنه ناعم ونزج. هل هو عسل؟" تقول هبة "هذا صحيح! أنت جيدة في هذه اللعبة يا مني!"

"Thanks, Heba. I know that I'll learn a lot from you while you're here!"

"I'm sure I'll learn a lot from you, too!" says Heba.

"شكرا يا هبة. أعلم أنني سأتعلم منك الكثير أثناء وجودك هنا."

تقول هبة "أنا متأكدة من أنني سأتعلم منك أيضا."

Lesson (4) physical properties & adjectives

physical property

Adjective to describe texture

mass
odor

solid

sticky

comfortable

liquid

soft

hard

Look and read about the physical properties of objects.



chair

- It's a **solid**. It's **hard**. It's made of **wood**.
You can't **bend** it. You can sit on it.



oxygen

- It's a **gas**. It's in the **air**. It doesn't have a **color**.
People need this.



ice cream

- It's a **solid**. It's **soft**. You eat it.
It's very **cold**. If it gets warm, it **melts**.



olive oil

- It's a **liquid**. It's **yellow**. You can **pour** it onto food or you
can cook with it.



steam

- It's a **gas**. It has **no color**, and it's **hot**. You see it when
you **boil water**.



milk

- It's a **liquid**. It's **white**. You drink it or cook with it.
You can add it to coffee.

Help your child describe the physical properties of objects.

ساعد طفلك أن يصف الخصائص الفيزيائية للأشياء.

General Activities

في الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- Mona and Haba are in the
a) living room b) kitchen c) garden d) bedroom
- Mona's got something from the kitchen.
a) father b) mom c) brother d) aunt
- Heba asks Mona to close
a) the door b) the window c) her eyes d) her hands
- Mona picks up a soft
a) guava b) fig c) tomato d) banana

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- " " means a person who can't see.
a) Deaf b) Dumb c) Blind d) Weak
- The smell of something is its
a) door b) odor c) mass d) texture
- Glue feels
a) rough b) hard c) sticky d) stick
- The elephant has a large It's very big.
a) mass b) odor c) texture d) smell
- Oxygen is a
a) solid b) liquid c) gas d) soft
- Olive oil is a It's yellow.
a) solid b) gas c) liquid d) hard
- is a gas. It has no color.
a) Milk b) Steam c) Chair d) Water
- This soft chair is
a) bad b) rough c) hard d) comfortable
- Honey is sweet and
a) hard b) bad c) sticky d) rough
- A chair is a solid. It's
a) soft b) hard c) sticky d) light

Lesson (4)

3

Read the following text and answer the questions.

Mona is excited because her cousin Heba has just arrived from Alexandria. Heba is blind. She can't see. Mona welcomes Heba to her house. Heba walks around the room and feels the texture of the chairs. They are comfortable. The old wood is rough, and it has an odor, too. Heba picks up a ping pong ball. She knows this is a ball and not a stone because of its mass. It's light, but a stone is heavy.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Heba is
a) deaf b) blind c) dumb d) sad
2. The underlined word "excited" means
a) sad b) happy c) funny d) kind
3. The chairs are
a) comfortable b) uncomfortable c) boring d) useless

B) Answer the following questions.

4. Why is Mona excited?
5. How does the old wood feel?

4 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. glue - is - The - sticky - .
2. to - my - Welcome - house - .
3. chairs - are - What - the - like - ?

5 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

A description of a strawberry

Guiding questions:

- Is it a solid or a liquid?
- Does it have an odor?
- What kind of texture does it have?

- What color is it?
- Is it hard or soft?

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Lesson (5)

A SCIENCE EXPERIMENT

Key vocabulary

glass jar

honey

water

vegetable oil

برطمان زجاجي

عسل

ماء

زيت نباتي

syringe

milk

maple syrup

dish detergent

محقنة (سرنجة)

حليب

شراب القيقب

منظف الأطباق

Extra vocabulary

different

groups

thick

separate

coin

mass

مختلف

مجموعات

سميك

منفصل

عملة معدنية

كتلة

container

sticky

layer

amounts

side

slowly

وعاء - حاوية

لصق - لاصق

طبقة

كميات

جانب

بطء

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs

Present

Past

P.P

pour

mix

notice

add

float

wonder

يصب poured

يختلط / يمزج mix ed

يلاحظ notice d

يضيف add ed

يطفو float ed

يتساءل - يتعجب wonder ed

poured

mix ed

notice d

add ed

float ed

wonder ed

Lesson (5)

Irregular verbs

Present	Past	P.P
do	يفعل did	done
sink	يفوص sank	sunk
make	يصنع made	made
show	يوضح / يبين showed	shown
think	يعتقد thought	thought
let	يسمح / يدع let	let

Important expressions and prepositions

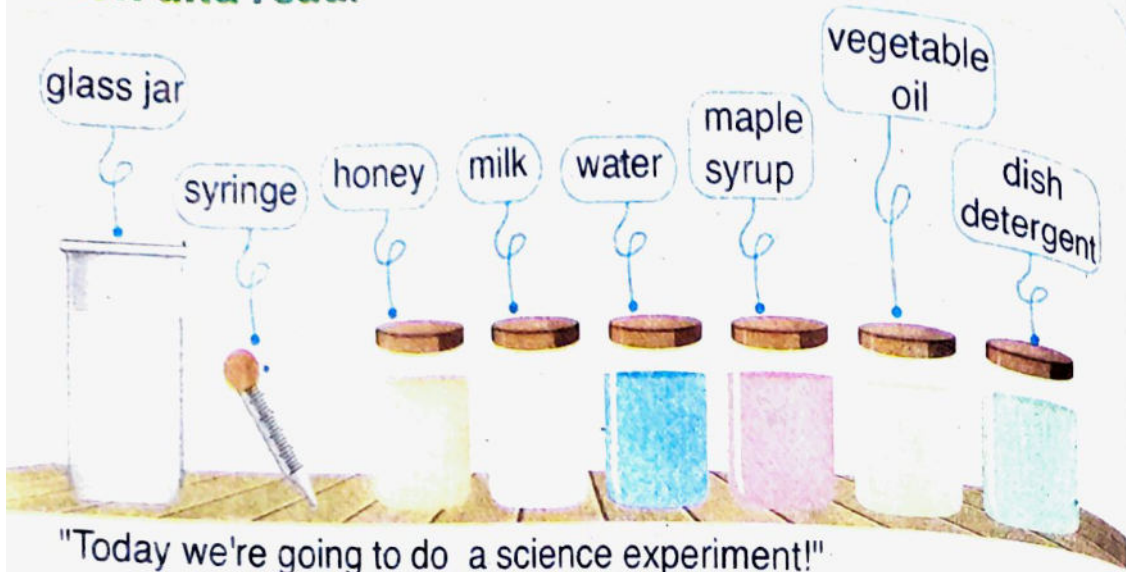
do experiment	يجري تجربة	mix together	يختلط سوياً
find out	يكشف	give out	يوزع
float on top	تطفو (الأعلى / على السطح)	pour in	يصب في
mix with	يختلط بـ	in the centre	في المنتصف
at the end	في النهاية	carry on	يستمر
go through	يلعب عبر (خلال)	in the first	في البداية



AL-BAHER



Listen and read.



"Today we're going to do a science experiment!" said Mrs Hend. "What happens when we pour different liquids into one container?"

"اليوم سنقوم بتجربة علمية!" قالت ميس هند. "ماذا يحدث عندما نسكب سوائل مختلفة في وعاء واحد؟" "I think they mix together," said Amir. "Let's find out!" said Mrs Hend.

قال أمير: "أعتقد أنها تختلط معا". قالت ميس هند "دعونا نكشف!"

Mrs Hend had some small jars with these liquids: honey, milk, water, maple syrup, vegetable oil, and dish detergent. She also had some tall glass jars and a plastic syringe. She gave these out to groups of children. Then she showed them what to do.

كان لدى ميس هند بعض البرطمانات الصغيرة التي تحتوي على هذه السوائل: العسل والحليب والماء وشراب القيقب والزيت النباتي ومنظف الأطباق. كان لديها أيضا بعض البرطمانات الزجاجية الطويلة ومحقنة بلاستيكية. وزعت هذه الأشياء إلى مجموعات من الأطفال. ثم أوضحت لهم ما يجب القيام به.

"First, slowly pour in the honey. Don't let it touch the side of the jar". Amir and Tarek poured the honey in. It was sticky and thick. "Next, slowly pour in the maple syrup."

"أولا، صب العسل ببطء. لا تدعه يلمس جانب البرطمان".

سكب أمير وطارق العسل فيه. كان لزجا وسميكا. "بعد ذلك، صب ببطء في شراب القيقب."

Amir and Tarek noticed that the maple syrup wasn't as thick as the honey. When they poured it, the syrup made a layer on top of the honey. "Look!" said Tarek "It didn't mix with the honey. It's on top."

لاحظ أمير وطارق أن شراب القيقب لم يكن سميكا مثل العسل. عندما سكبوه، كَوّن الشراب طبقة فوق العسل. قال طارق "انظروا! لم يختلط مع العسل. انه على القمة."



Lesson (5)

"Use the syringe to put your milk slowly on top of the syrup, in the centre. Then do the same with dish detergent", said Mrs Hend.

قالت ميس هند "استخدم المحقنة لوضع الحليب ببطء فوق الشراب في المنتصف. ثم افعل الشيء نفسه مع منظف الأطباق".

Amir and Tarek added the milk. It made a white layer on top of the syrup.

أضاف أمير وتارقي الحليب. وهذا كون طبقة بيضاء أعلى الشراب.

They then added the dish detergent. Then they used the syringe to make the water and vegetable oil pour down the side of the jar. Amir and Tarek carried on adding liquids in very slowly. At the end, their jar had six separate layers in.

ثم أضافوا منظف الأطباق. ثم استخدموا حقنة لجعل الماء والزيت النباتي ينساب على جوانب البرطمان. استمر أمير وتارقي في إضافة السوائل ببطء شديد. في النهاية، كان بالبرطمان ست طبقات منفصلة.

"Well done!" said Mrs Hend. "Why do you think that happened?"

"Is it because there are different amounts of the liquids?"

asked Amir.

قالت ميس هند "أحسنتم!". "لماذا تعتقد أن هذا حدث؟"

سأل أمير "هل لأن هناك كميات مختلفة من السوائل؟".

"No, Amir, We had the same amount, but the liquids all have a different mass. The heavier liquids sink to the bottom. The liquids with a lower mass float on top!"

تقول ميس هند "لا يا أمير. كان لدينا نفس الكمية، لكن السوائل جميعها لها كتلة مختلفة. تغوص السوائل الأثقل في القاع.

السوائل ذات الكتلة الأقل تصفو في الأعلى!"

Look and tick.

Object	floats	sinks	light	heavy
a coin				
a ping pong ball				
a tomato				
a button				
a stone				
honey				
an eraser				

Help your child read about a science experiment.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ عن تجربة علمية.

1 Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

mix - do - experiment - pour - did

- Amir : Do you like science?
 Tarek : Yes, I do.
 Amir : What are you going to 1)?
 Tarek : I'm going to do a science 2)?
 Amir : What happens when we 3) different liquids into
 a container?
 Tarek : I think they 4) together.
 Amir : Let's find out!
 Tarek : OK.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- Today we're going to a science experiment.
 a) play b) do c) make d) eat
- We pour different liquids into a
 a) bag b) container c) paper d) carpet
- Mom uses dish to wash the dishes.
 a) detergent b) agent c) determine d) honey
- Honey is and thick.
 a) solid b) hard c) sticky d) bad
- When we put milk into the container, it made a white on top of the syrup.
 a) foam b) piece c) layer d) bar
- Doctors use a with patients.
 a) needle b) syringe c) range d) ruler
- Milk is a
 a) gas b) solid c) liquid d) water
- Heavy objects to the bottom.
 a) float b) sink c) think d) fly
- If you put an eraser on water, it
 a) sinks b) flies c) thinks d) floats
- I'd like to drink maple
 a) food b) syrup c) oil d) honey

Lesson (5)

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

My name is Ali. I'm in primary five. I walk to school. I go to school five times a week. I like science a lot. It's a very interesting subject. Today we're going to do a science experiment! What happens when we pour different liquids into one container? They mix together. Liquids have a different mass. The heavier liquids sink to the bottom. The liquids with a lower mass float on top.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Ali goes to school
a) by car b) by bus c) by train d) on foot
2. Ali goes to school
a) 3 b) 4 c) 5 d) 6
times a week.
3. The heavier liquids
a) fly b) sink c) float d) think
to the bottom.

B) Answer the following questions.

4. What are they going to do today?
5. Why does Ali like science a lot?

4 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. is - Honey - sticky - thick - and - .
2. sink - The - liquids - bottom - heavier - the - to - .
3. are - water - Milk - liquids - and - .

5 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

A science Experiment

Guiding elements:

(science - coin - liquid - put - sink - mass)

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Lesson (6)

WRITING A REPORT

Key vocabulary

tunnel

flamingo

نفق waterfalls

البشروس / طائر الفلامنجو coastline

شلالات

خط الساحل

Extra vocabulary

sound

oasis

facts

details

the Mediterranean

صوت orchards

واحة popular

حقائق history

تفاصيل port

بساتين

شعبي / محبوب

تاريخ

ميناء

البحر الأبيض المتوسط

Conjugation of verbs

Present

hear

travel

jump

include

Past

يسمع heard

يسافر traveled

يقفز jumped

يتضمن included

P.P

heard

traveled

jumped

included

Important expressions and prepositions

go on a trip

at the bottom

have fun

It's time to...

يذهب في رحلة safe to

في القاع at the top

يمرح on vacation

حان الوقت ل... famous for

ن ل

لقمة

جازة

فوري

Listen and read.

Wadi El Rayan Waterfalls

Report by Wael Mahdi

شلالات وادي الريان

Last week, our class went on a trip to the waterfalls at Wadi El Rayan. It was beautiful! There are two lakes there: One at the top of the waterfalls and one at the bottom. The waterfalls are 67 meters high, so the sound of water falling is very loud. We couldn't hear our teacher talking very well!



في الأسبوع الماضي، ذهب فصلنا في رحلة إلى الشلالات في وادي الريان. كان شيئاً جميلاً.

هناك بحيرتان: واحدة في الجزء العلوي من الشلالات وواحدة في الأسفل. يبلغ ارتفاع الشلالات ٦٧ متراً، لذا فإن صوت سقوط الماء مرتفع جداً. لم نتمكن من سماع معلمنا وهو يتحدث بشكل جيد للغاية!

We learned that the water comes from an oasis in the desert. An oasis is a place in the desert with water. The water travels eight kilometers from the oasis to the lake through a tunnel.

علمنا أن الماء يأتي من واحة في الصحراء. الواحة هي مكان في الصحراء به ماء. ينتقل الماء ثمانية كيلومترات من الواحة إلى البحيرة عبر نفق.



Our teacher also told us that there are a lot of different birds living there. We saw some of the birds and my favorite was the flamingo.

أخبرنا معلمنا أيضاً أن هناك الكثير من الطيور المختلفة التي تعيش هناك. رأينا بعض الطيور وكان السيفضل لدي هو طائر الفلامنجو.

Then it was time to have some fun. We jumped into the bottom lake and went swimming. It is safe to swim there, and it helped us cool down after a long day.

ثم حان الوقت للحصول على بعض المتعة. قفزنا إلى البحيرة السفلية وذهبنا للسباحة. من الآمن السباحة هناك، وقد ساعدنا ذلك على الاسترخاء بعد يوم طويل.

Help your child read a report about a school trip.

AI-BAHER - Connect Plus (5) - First Term 149

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ تقريراً عن رحلة مدرسية.

Listen and read.**Damietta: A report by Gameela Hassan**

Damietta is a city on the Mediterranean coast of Egypt. It has a long, beautiful coastline and many people like to go there on vacation.



دمياط هي مدينة على ساحل البحر الأبيض المتوسط لمصر. لها خط ساحلي طويل، وجميل وكثير من الناس يحبون الذهاب إلى هناك في الإجازة.

Ras El-Bar Island is one of the most popular places to stay there. There are also many beautiful gardens and orchards to see. Orchards are places where fruit trees are grown. Damietta is also a busy port and an important fishing center.

جزيرة رأس البر هي واحدة من أكثر الأماكن شعبية للإقامة هناك. وهناك أيضا العديد من الحدائق الجميلة والبساتين لزونها. البساتين هي الأماكن التي تزرع فيها أشجار الفاكهة. دمياط هي أيضا ميناء مزدحم ومركز صيد مهم.

It has the largest number of fishing boats in Egypt. It is an important place for agriculture, too. Agriculture is the practice of farming. Crops such as rice, fruit, cotton, and date palm trees are grown here for the Egyptian people and also to sell to other countries.

بها أكبر عدد من قوارب الصيد في مصر. إنها مكان مهم للزراعة أيضا. الزراعة هي ممارسة الزراعة. تزرع المحاصيل مثل أرز والفواكه والقطن وأشجار النخيل هنا للشعب المصري وأيضاً لبيعها إلى بلدان أخرى.

Damietta is a busy city with a famous history but it is also a beautiful modern city. I'd really like to visit Damietta one day.

مياط مدينة مزدحمة ذات تاريخ مشهور ولكنها أيضا مدينة جميلة وحديثة. أود حقاً زيارة دمياط يوماً ما.

How to write a report

You should include facts, details, and definitions about the place you visited in your report.

❖ **Do research to make notes.**

A trip to Luxor

Guiding elements:

- 1- Where is the place?
- 2- What did you do there?
- 3- What things, people, or animals did you see there?
- 4- Why did you enjoy your visit?

A model report

Last week, our class went on a trip to Luxor. It was beautiful. There are many temples there. Al Karnak Temple is the most famous one there. We learned about the Valley of the Kings. It was fantastic. Our teacher told us that there were a lot of things to do there. There are many ancient sites to see there. I enjoyed my trip because it was fun and interesting.

❖ **Look and write a report about your trip to "The Pyramids".**



1 Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

enjoy - flamingo - went - waterfalls - go

- Wael : Where did your class go last week?
 Amr : They 1) to Wadi EL-Rayan.
 Wael : What did you see there?
 Amr : The 2) They are 67 meters high.
 Wael : What birds did you see there?
 Amr : I saw the 3)
 Wael : Did you 4) your trip?
 Amr : Yes, we did.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- Last week we went a trip to the waterfalls of Wadi El-Rayan.
 a) in b) on c) at d) by
- A/An is a place in the desert with water.
 a) lake b) oasis c) park d) island
- My favorite is the flamingo.
 a) animal b) bird c) oasis d) thing
- Damietta has a long and beautiful on the Mediterranean Sea.
 a) animal b) bird c) oasis d) coastline
- In Damietta there are many beautiful gardens and to see.
 a) oceans b) orchards c) lakes d) buds
- Many people like to go to Damietta vocations.
 a) on b) in c) at d) of
- Damietta is a city with a famous history.
 a) lazy b) busy c) tall d) bad
- Agriculture is the practice of
 a) playing b) running c) swimming d) farming

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Damietta is a city on the Mediterranean coast of Egypt. It has a long, beautiful coastline and many people like to go there on vacation. Ras El-Bar island is one of the most popular places to stay there. There are also many beautiful gardens and orchards to see. Orchards are places where fruit trees are grown. Damietta is also a busy port and an important fishing center. It has the largest number of fishing boats in Egypt. Damietta is a busy city with a famous history but it is also a beautiful, modern city. I'd really like to visit Damietta one day.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- The main idea of the text is
 a) Damietta b) Egypt
 c) orchards d) port
- Ras El-Bar island is one of the most places to stay there.
 a) funny b) popular
 c) expensive d) boring
- Many people like to go to Damietta on
 a) Saturday b) foot
 c) vacation d) a bus

B) Answer the following questions.

- What are orchards?
- What is Damietta famous for?

4 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

A school trip

Guiding questions:

- Where did you go?
- How did you go?
- What did you see?
- What could you do there?
- Why did you enjoy there?

Lesson (7)

LANGUAGE

Read the story.

"OK, students" said Mrs Hend. "Today we're going to do a science experiment.

You can work in groups of three. There is a solid object in one box, and a container of liquid in another box. You have to study them and answer some questions."



قالت الأستاذة هند "حسنًا أيها الطلاب". "اليوم سنقوم بتجربة علمية. يمكنكم العمل في مجموعات من ثلاثة طلاب. يوجد جسم صلب في صندوق واحد، ووعاء به سائل في صندوق آخر. عليكم دراستها والإجابة على بعض الأسئلة."

Lara was sitting on her own, but Reem and Dina were sitting in front of her. Reem turned around and spoke to Lara" Lara, Mrs Hend said we could work in groups of three. Would you like to work with us?"

كانت لارا تجلس بمفردها، لكن ريم ودينا كانتا تجلسان أمامها. استدارت ريم وتحدثت إلى لارا قائلة "يا لارا، الأستاذة هند قالت أننا يمكن أن نعمل في مجموعات من ثلاثة. هل تودين العمل معنا؟"

"Oh, yes please," said Lara happily. The girls sat together, and they took out their pens and notebooks. "OK" said Dina, "What do we need to do?"

قالت لارا بسعادة: "أوه، نعم من فضلك". جالست الفتيات معاً، وأخرجوا أقلامهم ودفاترهم. قالت دينا "حسنًا". "ماذا علينا أن نفعل؟"

Lara looked at her notes. "Mrs Hend said there was a solid object in one box and a container of liquid in another box." "That's right" said Reem. "She said we had to study them and answer some questions." "Great, let's get started!" said Dina.

نظرت لارا إلى ملاحظاتها قائلة. "قالت الأستاذة هند كان هناك جسم صلب في صندوق ووعاء به سائل في صندوق آخر. قالت ريم "هذا صحيح". "قالت إنه كان علينا دراستها والإجابة على بعض الأسئلة". قالت دينا "عظيم. دعونا نبدأ".

Reported speech

g. He said, " I play the guitar well".

(Direct)

He said that he played the guitar well".

(Reported)

The steps

1 said → said

said to → told

2 We omit " " and put that or (we can omit "that").

3 يتم تحويل الضمائر حسب المتكلم والمخاطب:

ضمائر الفاعل		ضمائر المفعول		صفات الملكية	
Direct Speech	Reported Speech	Direct Speech	Reported Speech	Direct Speech	Reported Speech
I	he / she	me	him / her	my	his / her
you	I / we	you	me / us	your	my / our
we	they	us	them	our	their

4 يتم تحويل الظروف الزمنية وأسماء الإشارة كالتالي إذا كان فعل القول ماضيًا وتبقى كما

هي إذا كان فعل القول مضارعًا:

أسماء الإشارة		التعبيرات الزمنية		التعبيرات الزمنية	
Direct Speech	Reported Speech	Direct Speech	Reported Speech	Direct Speech	Reported Speech
this	that	today	that day	tonight	that night
these	those	tomorrow	the following day	now	then
ظرف المكان		yesterday	the day before	ago	before
		last week	the week before		
here	there				

Help your child use reported speech.

ساعد طفلك أن يستخدم الكلام الغير مباشر.

5 We change the tenses like this with (said / told):

Direct Speech	Reported Speech	Direct Speech	Reported Speech
am / is	was	can	could
are	were	will	would
have / has	had	may	might

6 تحويل الأزمنة:

الأزمنة

Direct Speech

Reported Speech

Present Simple

Past Simple

e.g. Walaa said "I like English."

Walaa said that she liked English.

Present Continuous

Past Continuous

e.g. Ali said to me "I am watching TV."

Ali told me he was watching TV.

Past Simple

Past Simple / Past Perfect

e.g. Ahmed said "I saw a bird."

Ahmed said he saw / had seen a bird.

Modals

Past Modals

e.g. She said "I will travel tomorrow."

She said she would travel the following day.

e.g. He said "I can swim."

He said he could swim.

Lesson (7)

Choose the correct word(s).

1

1. Mona said she playing tennis.
a) like b) likes c) liked d) liking
2. Ali said he sometimes eggs for breakfast.
a) had b) have c) having d) has
3. Khaled said he swim.
a) can b) will c) may d) could
4. Amr said he be ready to carry things.
a) is b) will c) can d) would
5. Mazen said it hot and sunny.
a) is b) are c) was d) can
6. Omar said, "I ride a bike."
a) can b) am c) are d) have

2

Choose the correct word(s).

1. "Dina animals," said Mom.
a) love b) loves c) is loving d) loving
2. "I play the guitar." said Noha.
a) can b) could c) am d) would
3. Shady said Mr Ahmed in Alexandria.
a) work b) working c) works d) worked
4. Eman said she cooking with her Mom.
a) liking b) like c) liked d) likes
5. Mona said it cold and rainy.
a) is b) was c) are d) were
6. Aya said she to visit the park.
a) want b) wanting c) wants d) wanted

3

Read and complete with the correct form.

1. He said he (can) swim.
2. She said she (play) tennis.
3. Wael (says) his favourite lesson was science.
4. Ali said he (will) come early.
5. Rola said she (go) to school.

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

General Activities

من الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- Today we're going to do a science
a) complement b) experiment c) expert d) survey
- You can work in of three.
a) groups b) classes c) herds d) boxes
- There is a object in one box.
a) liquid b) solid c) gas d) steam
- You have to study and some questions.
a) ask b) answer c) delete d) wonder

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- Would you like to work us?
a) at b) by c) with d) on
- Water is a
a) solid b) liquid c) gas d) stone
- He said he play the guitar.
a) can b) could c) will d) may
- Amira said she to the library on Mondays.
a) go b) goes c) went d) going
- Mariam said she visiting the park.
a) like b) likes c) liked d) liking
- Fares said he going to play football after school.
a) is b) was c) has d) are
- Mona said, "I to the park."
a) go b) goes c) going d) to go
- Ziad said, "I swim."
a) am b) can c) had d) have
- Magdy said, "I money."
a) needs b) need c) needed d) needing
- Mom said it hot and sunny.
a) is b) are c) were d) was

Lesson (7)

Read the following text and answer the questions.

3

My name is Mazen. I'm in primary five. I like my school very much. Science is my favorite lesson. Yesterday I went on a school trip to the Science Museum. We learned a lot about the environment and saw a lot of things. We enjoyed our time there. It was a very exciting trip. I talked to my class about this visit.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- Science is a
a) sport b) food c) subject d) season
- is Mazen's favorite lesson.
a) English b) Science c) Arabic d) History
- Mazen likes his very much.
a) club b) street c) bike d) school

B) Answer the following questions.

- Where did Mazen go yesterday?
- What did they learn about?

4

Order the words to make correct sentences.

- to - you - need - Do - a calculator - borrow - ?
- visiting - like - I - park - the - .
- a science - do - Let's - experiment - .
- said - it - Mom - cold - was - rainy - and - .

5

Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

A visit to the museum

Guiding questions:

- Where did you go?
- Who did you go with?
- Why did you enjoy the trip?
- How did you go?
- What did you see?

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Writing Corner

Natural resources

Natural resources are things we can use from nature, like wood and soil. We use them to make the things we need. We use wood to make tables, stone to build houses, and plants for food. The sun is a natural resource because it gives us solar energy to make electricity. Some natural resources are renewable, but other natural resources are non-renewable such as coal and gas.

Resources in Ancient Egypt

Ancient Egypt was very successful because it had good natural resources. Agriculture was a very important part of the economy of ancient Egypt. The Nile flooded every year and made the soil fertile. Farmers grew lots of different crops, such as cotton and rice. They used flax to make linen for clothes. Stones and rocks were useful natural resources in ancient Egypt. They could build the Pyramids and temples.

Honey

Egyptians used honey to make medicine. It was very important for helping with problems with the skin or eyes. There are hieroglyphics in ancient temples which show people keeping bees. Honey was an expensive but important natural resource. People used it to make food taste sweet. They put bees in houses called hives.

Wadi El Rayan waterfalls

Last week our class went on a trip to the waterfalls at Wadi El Rayan. It was beautiful! There are two lakes there. The sound of water falling is very loud. We learned that water comes from an oasis in the desert. It is a place in the desert with water. We saw some of the birds and my favorite was the flamingo. We had fun and it was a fantastic day.

Help your child write a paragraph.

ساعد طفلك أن يكتب فقرة.

Review on Unit (3)

Natural resources

موارد طبيعية

coal
fertile
mud
raw materials

فحم	date	بلح	economy
خصيب	flax	نبات الكتان	linen
طين	pale	شاحب اللون	mine
		مواد خام	

الاقتصاد

قماد الكتان

منجم

States of water

حالات الماء

liquid
boil
fixed shape

سائل	solid	صلب	gas
يغلي	freeze	يتجمد	melt
شكل ثابت			

غاز

ينوب

Physical properties

خصائص فيزيائية

bend
odor
sticky

يطوي	hard	خشن - صلب	mass
رائحة	rough	خشن	soft
لزوج - لاصق	texture	نسيج	

الكتلة

ناعم

Stories

قصص

dig
sink
skeleton

يحفر	flamingo
يفطس / يفوص	shovel
هيكل عظمي	expert

طائر الفلامنجو
جاروف
خبير

hole
tunnel

حفرة

نفق

First Conditional

Form:

If + present simple , will + inf.

Usage:

We use the first conditional:

⇒ To describe events which will probably happen in the future.

e.g. If we go to the museum, we will see dinosaur bones.

Second Conditional

Form:

If + past simple , would + inf.

Usage:

We use the second conditional:

⇒ To describe events we imagine, but probably won't happen.

e.g. If it snowed in October, I would be very surprised.

Reported speech

Direct speech

الكلام المباشر

The words that a person says.

e.g. Seleem said, "I like reading comics."

Reported speech

الكلام الغير المباشر (الكلام المنقول)

To report what a person said.

e.g. Seleem said he liked reading comics.

Notice the changes

أحظ التغييرات

e.g. Fareeda said, "I can play tennis."

Fareeda said she could play tennis."

- ① Change the subject according to the speaker.
- ② Change the verb from present to past.
- ③ We don't use speech marks.

Dictation on Unit (3)

Lesson (1)

غاز الميثان

تربة

شلال

حجر

سحابة

ماء

Lesson (2)

جاروف

حفرة

يحفر

عظام

Lesson (3)

الاقتصاد

نبات الكتان (خيوط الكتان)

يشني - يلوي

خصبة

قماش الكتان

ورق البردي

Lesson (4)

ناعم / لين / طري

قاس / جامد

لاصق / لزج

خشن

غاز

سائل

صلب

كتلة

خفيف

ثقل

مريح

رائحة

ملمس / نسيج / قماش

أعنى / كفيف

Lesson (5)

برطمان زجاجي

عسل

ماء

زيت نباتي

محقنة (سرنجة)

حليب

شراب القيقب

منظف الأطباق

Lesson (6)

نفق

البشروس / طائر الفلامنجو

شلالات

خط الساحل

Activities On Unit (3)

في الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. People in ancient Egypt used to build houses and other buildings.
a) mud b) gold c) coal d) sand
2. They took mud from the when it was soft.
a) lake b) Nile c) ocean d) sea
3. They made mud into square
a) picks b) bricks c) chicks d) luck
4. The bricks were hard and when they dried.
a) wrong b) strong c) weak d) soft

2 Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

enjoy - visited - train - Alexandria - play

- Ali : Where did you go last weekend?
Omar : I went to 1)
Ali : How did you go there?
Omar : By 2)
Ali : What did you do?
Omar : I 3) Alexandria Library.
Ali : Did you 4) your time?
Omar : Yes, I did.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

My name is Nada. I live in a big city. It's a very exciting place to live. It's quiet and comfortable. I can do a lot of activities and meet a lot of friends. I love my city very much, but I have a big problem. The traffic is always busy on my way to school, so I sometimes go to school late. It takes me an hour to reach school. There are many places to visit in this city.

Activities On Unit (3)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Nada lives in a big
a) village b) house c) palace d) city
2. The underlined word "late" means not
a) small b) early c) big d) young
3. It takes Nada hour to reach school.
a) four b) three c) two d) one

Answer the following questions.

4. What's the big problem Nada has?
5. How is Nada's city?

4

The Reader

Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. The dugong was called "Donga".
2. Donga lives in the mangrove forest.
3. The Nubian ibex lives in Hill Elba.
4. Gebel Elba was very steep for Subira's legs.

☐
☐
☐
☐

Complete the following sentences:

1. Jubari came to Nasser.
2. Jubari's mother taught him not to stay near animals with big

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Hani said that he
 a) eat b) eats c) will eat d) ate
2. If I have money, I
 a) will b) would c) could d) might
3. What would you do if you
 a) have b) has c) had d) having
4. If you studied hard, you
 a) will b) would c) may d) can
5. Fareeda said she
 a) can b) will c) may d) could
6. If she to the museum, she'll see dinosaur bones.
 a) go b) goes c) went d) will go

6 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. are - Coal - gas - and - resources - non-renewable - .
2. linen - make - People - flax - from - .
3. liked - honey - Who - ancient - in - Egypt - ?

7 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

Papyrus

Guiding elements:

(Ancient Egypt - used - plant - baskets - paper - books)

Unit 4

We're on the move

A roller coaster in Egypt

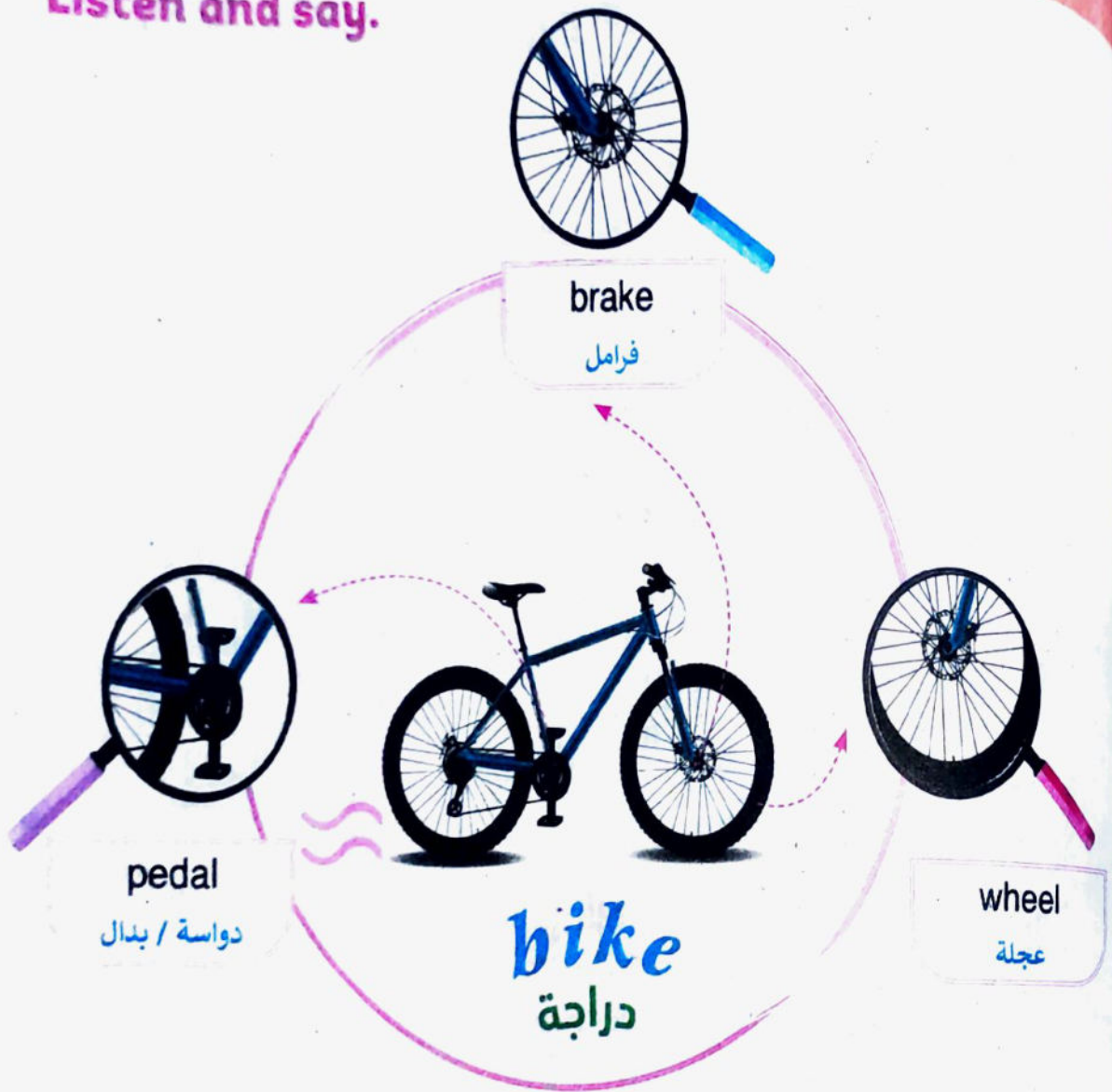
In this unit, the students will ...

- explore how bikes move.
- identify, understand, and use question tags.
- read and follow instruction for making two different paper airplanes.
- read a science-fiction story about flying and gravity.
- understand blogs about jobs in science.
- write an email using sequencing words.
- understand a story about the first man to fly.

Lesson (1)

MY NEW BIKE

Listen and say.



Extra vocabulary

cycling

ركوب الدراجات

grandparents

الأجداد

push force

قوة الدفع

hill

تل

pull force

قوة السحب

transportation

وسائل مواصلات

speed

سرعة

safe places

أماكن آمنة

science lesson

حصة العلوم

cupboard

دولاب / خزانة

parents

الوالدان

Lesson (1)

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present

Past

P.P

يركب دراجة cycled

cycled

يدفع (للأمام) pushed

pushed

يسحب pulled

pulled

يوقف stopped

stopped

يبطئ slowed down

slowed down

يمر على passed

passed

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present

Past

P.P

يركب rode

ridden

يسقط / يقع fell

fallen

يرتدي / يضغط على put on

put on

يُطير flew

flown

يرمي / يقذف threw

thrown

Important expressions and prepositions

It's great!

إنه شيء رائع! I see.

فهمت.

Here I go!

ها أنا ذا! Be careful!

كن حريصاً (حذراً)!

good at

جيد في up and down

أعلى وأسفل

get in

يدخل / يركب سيارة at 60 km/h

بسرعة 60 كيلومتر في الساعة

go up

يصعد get to

يصل إلى

go down

يهبط get out

يخرج

I'm top of the class.

Km/h = kilometer an hour

أنا الأول على الفصل.

كيلومتر في الساعة

Listen and read.

Mazen : Nabil, have you seen my new bike? I got it last week from my grandparents.

مازن: نabil، هل رأيت دراجتي الجديدة؟ حصلت عليها الأسبوع الماضي من أجدادي.

Nabil : It's great! Shall I get my bike and we can cycle together?

نabil: إنه لشيء رائع! هل أحضر دراجتي ونركب الدراجات معاً؟

Mazen : Well, I haven't ridden a bike before. I don't know how. My parents want me to learn.

مازن: حسناً، أنا لم أركب دراجة من قبل. لا أعرف كيف. والداي يريداني أن أتعلم ركوبها.

Nabil : I can teach you. It's easy. It's all about the forces which we learned about in our science lesson yesterday.

نabil: يمكنني أن أعلمك. الأمر سهل. الأمر كله يتعلق بالقوى التي تعلمنا عنها في درس العلوم أمس.

Mazen : What do you mean?

مازن: ماذا تقصد؟

Nabil : You use force to get the bike to move by pushing the pedals. You also use force to stop the bike, by using the brakes. That slows down or stops the wheels. If you want to increase your speed, push the pedals more quickly.

نabil: يمكنك استخدام القوة لتجعل الدراجة تتحرك عن طريق دفع البدالات. يمكنك أيضاً استخدام القوة لوقف الدراجة، وذلك باستخدام الفرامل. هذا يبطئ أو يوقف العجلات. إذا كنت تريد زيادة سرعتك، اضغط على البدالات بسرعة أكبر.

Mazen : I see. I should be good at cycling then, as I'm top of the class in science! Here I go!

مازن: انا فهمت. يجب أن أكون جيداً في ركوب الدراجات إذاً، لأنني في القمة في درس العلوم! ها أنا ذا!

Nabil : Good. You'll need to cycle harder when you go up that hill.

نabil: جيد. ستحتاج أن تقود الدراجة بقوة أكبر عندما تصعد هذا التل.

Mazen : Do you mean use more push force?

مازن: هل تقصد استخدام المزيد من قوة الدفع؟

Lesson (1)

Nabil : Yes, but remember, when you go down the hill, the bike is going to go faster, so you'll need to use the brakes.

نابيل : نعم، لكن تذكر، عندما تنزل التل، ستذهب الدراجة بشكل أسرع، لذلك ستحتاج إلى استخدام الفرامل.

Mazen : I did it! That was great!

مازن : لقد فعلتها! كان ذلك رائعاً!

Nabil : Be careful! You're now cycling too slowly. You need to go faster or the bike will fall over ... Oh, dear, are you OK?

نابيل : كن حذراً! أنت الآن تقود الدراجة ببطء شديد. كنت بحاجة للذهاب أسرع أو ستسقط الدراجة ... آه، يا عزيزي، هل أنت بخير؟

Mazen : I fell, but I'm fine.

مازن : لقد سقطت، ولكن أنا بخير.

Nabil : I'll help you stand up.

نابيل : سأساعدك على الوقوف.

Mazen : Thanks! That's an example of a pull force, isn't it? I think I'm better at science than riding a bike!

مازن : شكراً! هذا مثال على قوة السحب، أليس كذلك؟ أعتقد أنني أفضل في العلوم من ركوب الدراجة!

Answer the following questions:

① What do you use to get the bike to move?

② What do you use to stop the bike?

③ What do you do when you want to increase your speed?

Did you know ?

The fastest roller coaster (قطار الملاهي) in the world is the Formula Rossa. It can move from 0 to 240 kilometers an hour in 4.9 seconds. You can ride it in Abu Dhabi (مدينة أبو ظبي).

Help your child read a dialog about how a bike moves. ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ حواراً عن كيف تتحرك الدراجة.

Read and learn.

- ✎ A **push force** makes the bike move.
- ✎ **Brakes** slow down or stop the wheels.
- ✎ To increase your **speed**, push the pedals more **quickly**.
- ✎ If you cycle too **slowly**, the bike will **fall over**.
- ✎ When a car goes too **fast** down a hill, you need to use the **brakes**.
- ✎ The car goes at 60 **Km/h**. This is the car's **speed**.

Look and learn.

Forces

pull



open a door



fly a kite



put on socks

push



kick a ball



close a laptop



throw a basketball

General Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب.

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. I usually get the to school.
a) bus b) car c) taxi d) train
2. took me to school today.
a) Mom b) Dad c) Aunt d) Uncle
3. I my dad and closed the car door.
a) invited b) helped c) thanked d) visited
4. I had some time to talk to my
a) teachers b) uncles c) cousins d) friends

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. I'm good at riding a
a) rocket b) ship c) bike d) plane
2. We can to school.
a) bicycle b) swim c) cycle d) bike
3. We learned about forces in our lesson yesterday.
a) history b) science c) Arabic d) music
4. The bike moves by pushing the
a) pedals b) brakes c) seats d) wheels
5. If you want to stop the bike, use the
a) seats b) wheels c) brakes d) pedals
6. If you want to increase the, push the pedals more quickly.
a) distance b) quantity c) wheel d) speed
7. Cycle harder when you go that hill.
a) down b) up c) in d) out
8. When you go fast down a hill, you need to use the
a) wheels b) pedals c) brakes d) seats
9. An example of a force is helping someone stand up.
a) pull b) push c) relax d) sleep
10. I'm good at
a) cycle b) cycles c) cycling d) cycled

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

3

Read the following text and answer the questions.

I usually get the bus to school, but Dad took me to school today. I opened the car door and got in. Dad started the car and when we passed the park, the car was traveling at 40 kilometers an hour. It didn't take long to get to school. I thanked my dad, got out, and closed the car door. I was early, so I had some time to talk to my friends. I like it when Dad takes me to school.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- I usually get to school by
 a) car b) train c) bus d) boat
- The underlined words "get to" mean to at school.
 a) play b) run c) walk d) arrive
- I went to school with today.
 a) Mom b) Dad c) brother d) sister

B) Answer the following questions.

- What speed was the car traveling at?

- What did you do when you get to school early?

4

Write a text of FIFTY (50) words.

Your new bike

Guiding words:

(birthday - my parents - learn how - pedals - brakes)

Lesson (2)

LANGUAGE

Listen and say.



tires

إطارات



spring

زنبرك



rope

حبل



hook

خطاف

Key vocabulary

friction

قوة الاحتكاك tennis ball

كرة تنس

tension

قوة الشد (الضغط) object

شيء

space

فراغ / مساحة / فضاء path

طريق

air resistance

مقاومة الهواء press

يضغط على

gravity

الجاذبية الأرضية spring force

قوة الزنبرك

scientist

عالم normal size

حجم طبيعي

plane

طائرة dictionary

قاموس

keyboard

لوحة مفاتيح hang

يعلق

Definitions

tension

It is a pull force.

gravity

a force that pulls objects toward the Earth

friction

rubbing of one surface against another

air resistance

works against an object as it moves through the air.

spring force

happens when you press a spring and it gets smaller.
The spring returns to its normal size when you take your finger off.

Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Question tag

السؤال المذيّل

✎ It has two parts.

يتكون من جزئين.

(1) a sentence , (2) question tag?

Usage

✎ We use it to check or confirm information.

نستخدم السؤال المذيّل للتحقق من المعلومات أو تأكيدها.

Form

✎ The question tag is formed of:

يتكون السؤال المذيّل من:

helping verb / modal verb + subject pronoun?

فعل مساعد

فعل ناقص

ضمير فاعل

Notes

1 positive sentence , negative tag?

الجملة مثبتة ← السؤال منفي

e.g. You live in Egypt, don't you?

2 negative sentence , positive tag?

الجملة منفية ← السؤال مثبت

e.g. Ali didn't go home, did he?

3 We use a comma before the question tag and a question mark after the question tag.

Lesson (2)

لاحظ الأفعال في حالتى الالآت والنفى:

is / are / was / were	↔	isn't / aren't / wasn't / weren't
have / has / had + P.P	↔	haven't / hasn't / hadn't
will / would / can	↔	won't / wouldn't / can't
/ could / must		/ couldn't / mustn't

e.g. This bird can fly, can't it? e.g. He'll call you tomorrow, won't he?

عند عدم وجود فعل مساعد أو ناقص فى الجملة:

مصدر الفعل → don't

v + s, es, ies → doesn't

التصريف الثانى للفعل → didn't

e.g. They like museums, don't they?

e.g. She makes tea, doesn't she?

e.g. He visited the zoo, didn't he?

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- There isn't any coffee in the cupboard, there?
a) am b) is c) are d) have
- She didn't tell me her name, she?
a) did b) didn't c) wasn't d) weren't
- You send Grandpa an email, won't you?
a) can b) may c) will d) must
- We can make dinner tonight, we?
a) can't b) isn't c) mustn't d) aren't
- It be hot tomorrow, will it?
a) can't b) isn't c) won't d) aren't

2 Read and complete with the correct form.

- Dad will help me with my homework, (can't) he?
- You (lived) in Damietta, don't you?
- They can speak English, (won't) they?
- Hala (goes) to the sports center, didn't she?

General Activities

1 Read and complete the dialog with the words in the box:

didn't - gravity - What - scientist - cook

Anas : I went to the museum today.

Safia : Really! 1) was there?

Anas : There was a 2) talking to some children.

Safia : What did he talk about?

Anas : The importance of 3)

Safia : You understood it, 4) you?

Anas : Yes, I did.

2 Read and complete the sentences with words from the box:

slowly - space - friction - smaller - pull

1. You can fall on ice because there is less than on the path.
2. Tension is a force.
3. Air resistance makes an object move more
4. When you press on a spring, it gets
5. Gravity keeps people from flying up into

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. between the bike tires and the road stops you from falling.
a) Friction b) Tension c) Gravity d) Force
2. When you hang a bag on a hook, the bag creates a pull force called
a) push b) friction c) tension d) resistance
3. works against an object as it moves through the air.
a) Tension b) Gravity c) Air resistance d) Pull

Lesson (2)

happens when you press a spring and it gets smaller.

The spring returns to its normal size when you take your finger off.

a) Tension b) Friction c) Gravity d) Spring force

is a force that pulls objects toward the Earth.

a) Airresistance b) Gravity c) Spring force d) Tension

The children visited the science museum today, ?

a) didn't they b) did they c) were they d) had they

People can see some interesting things there, ?

a) can they b) can't they c) will they d) won't they

Their teacher won't give them a lot of homework, ?

a) will he b) won't they c) can he d) can't he

The science museum isn't far from the city center, ?

a) isn't it b) is it c) does it d) doesn't it

Hamdi and his family traveled by boat, didn't ?

a) he b) him c) they d) them

4 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. won't - tomorrow - It - rain - it - , will - ?

2. does - doesn't - Your - French, - mom - speak - she - ?

3. didn't - chicken, - She - have - she - did - ?

5 Complete the question tags.

1. Mr Hassan doesn't drive cars, he?

2. I'll be in your class next year, I?

3. Rania can play the guitar, she?

4. Eman didn't go to the park, she?

5. I like English, I?

Help you

Lesson (3)

PAPER AIRPLANES

Key vocabulary

paper airplane	طائرة ورقية	triangle
dart	سهم (طائرة ورقية)	top
glider	طائرة شراعية	tip
instructions	تعليمات	vertically
corner	زاوية - ركن	flat
faster	أسرع	farther
longer	أطول	wing

مثلث
أعلى / علوي
طرف
عمودياً
مسطح / مستوي
أبعد
جناح

Conjugation of verbs

	Present	Past	P.P
take		يأخذ took	taken
fold		يطوى folded	folded
crease	يضعف لعمل ثنيه / يثنى	يجعد creased	creased
repeat		يكرر repeated	repeated

Important expressions and prepositions

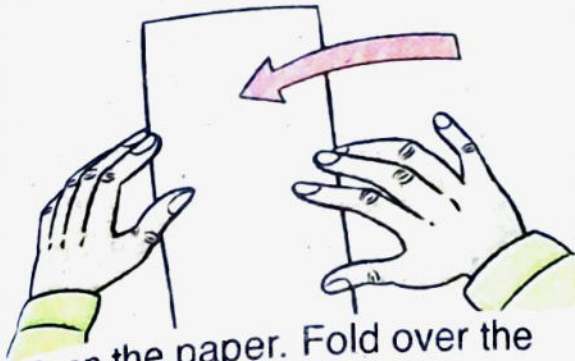
a piece of	قطعة من	turn over	ينقلب
in half	في المنتصف	from point to point	من نقطة إلى نقطة
fold down	يطوى لأسفل	make sure	يؤكد
fold over	يطوى لأعلى	How far?	كم المسافة؟

Lesson (3)

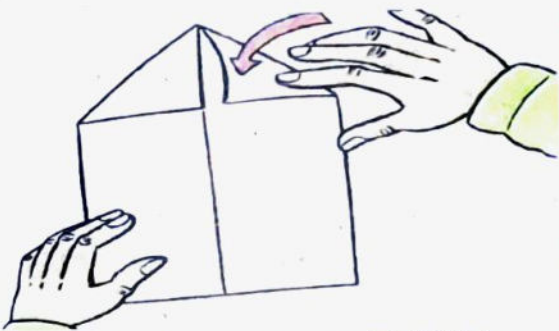
Read the instructions. Make a dart paper airplane.

The Dart

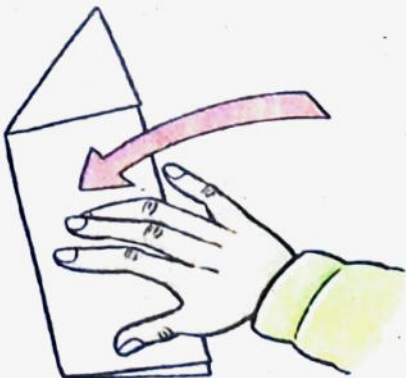
- 1 Take a piece of paper and fold it in half **vertically**. Crease it.
خذ قطعة من الورق وأطوها نصفين رأسياً واضغط على الشبه.



- 2 Open the paper. Fold over the top two corners.
افتح الورقة. أطو أعلى طرفيها.



- 3 Turn the paper over. Fold it in half and crease it.
اقلب الورقة. أطوها لنصفين واضغط على الشبه.



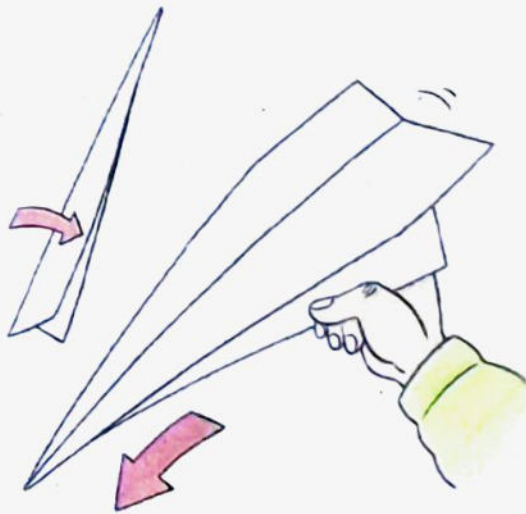
- 4 Fold down one wing and crease the top of it. Then fold it down again and crease it again.

أطو أحد أجنحتها واضغط الشبه العليا ثم أطوها لأسفل واضغط على الشبه مرة أخرى.



- 5 Repeat step 4 with the other wing. Your Dart is ready to fly.

كرر الخطوة الرابعة مع الجناح الآخر. طائرتك الورقية جاهزة للطيران.



Help your child make a Dart paper airplane.

ساعد طفلك أن يصنع طائرة سهم ورقية.

Read the instructions. Make a Glider paper airplane

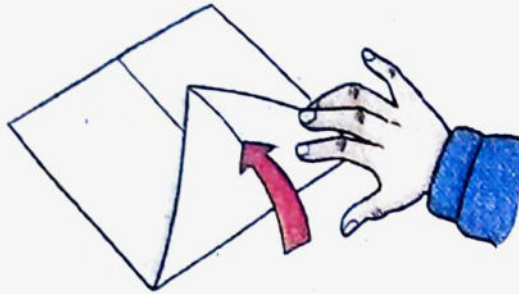
The Glider

- 1 Repeat steps 1 and 2 for the Dart.

كرر الخطوتين ١ و ٢ من صناعة الطائرة الورقية.

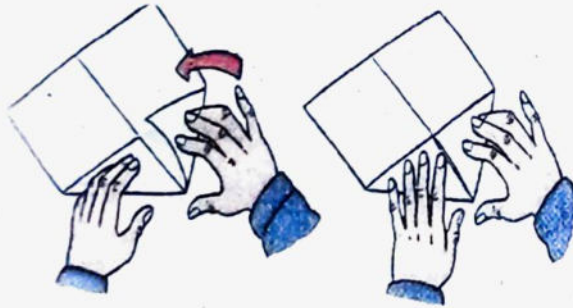
- 2 Fold over the top triangle. Crease it.

اطو المثلث أعلى الورقة ثم اضغط على الثنية.



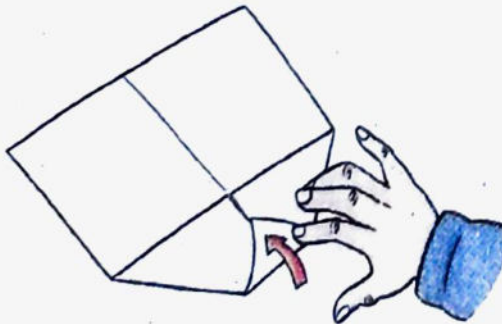
- 3 Fold over the top two corners again. Make sure all of the paper is flat.

اطو أعلى الجانبين مرة ثانية. تأكد من أن كل الورق مسطح.



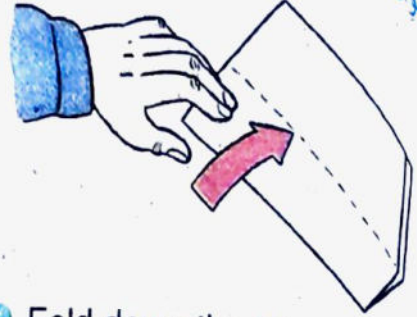
- 4 Fold over the tip from point to point. Crease everything well.

اطو الطرف الأعلى من نقطة إلى أخرى. واضغط على كل ثنية بشكل جيد.



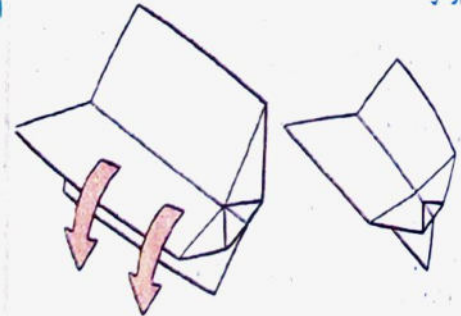
- 5 Fold the plane in half.

اطو الطائرة من المنتصف.



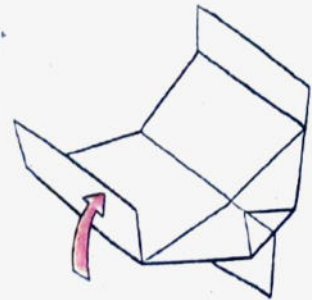
- 6 Fold down the wings. Fold from one corner to the other corner.

اطو الأجنحة لأسفل. اطو من جانب إلى الجانب الآخر.



- 7 Now fold up a small (about 1 cm) piece of the wing. Your Glider is ready to fly!

والآن اطو أعلى الجناح قطعة تبلغ ١ سم. طائرتك الشراعية جاهزة للطيران.



General Activities

1 Read and complete the dialog with the words in the box:

wood - Dart - over - paper - vertically

- Self : What are you doing, Anas?
Anas : I'm making a 1) airplane.
Self : How do you make it?
Anas : Fold a piece of paper in half 2)
Self : What do you do after that?
Anas : Fold 3) the top two corners. Fold down the two wings.
Anas : Your 4) is ready to fly.

2 Read and complete the text with words from the box:

tip - top - down - piece - peace

To make a Glider paper airplane, you need to take a 1)
of paper and fold it in half vertically. Fold over the 2) two corners.
Fold over the 3) from point to point and crease everything well.
Fold 4) the wings. Fold up a small piece of the wing. It's ready now.

3 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words.

A Dart paper airplane

Guiding words:

(paper - vertically - crease - open - Fold - Turn)

Lesson (4)

GRANDPA'S SPECIAL SHOES

Key vocabulary

astronaut	رائد فضاء	a trampoline	ترامبولين (جهاز للقفز)	gravity	جاذبية
special	خاص / مميز	a parachute	باراشوت	normal	طبيعي

Extra vocabulary

usual	معتاد	leaves	أوراق شجر	stadium	استاد
different	مختلف	fall	فصل الخريف	amazing	مذهل
ground	أرض	planets	كواكب	pilot	طيار
journey	رحلة	space rocket	صاروخ فضاء	desert	صحراء

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

	Present	Past	P.P
look like	يشبه	looked like	looked like
reply	يرد / يجيب	replied	replied
follow	يتبع	followed	followed
jump	يقفز	jumped	jumped
float	يطفو	floated	floated
pour	يصب	poured	poured

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

	Present	Past	P.P
wear	يرتدي	wore	worn
bring	يحضّر	brought	brought
show	يبين / يعرض	showed	shown
sit down	يجلس	sat down	sat down
hit	يضرب	hit	hit
fall	يقع	fell	fallen

Lesson (4)

Important expressions and prepositions

better than usual
by their sides
a pair of

أفضل من المعتاد fly up

بجانبيهم fly over

زوج من float up into the air

يحقو عالي

يحقو فوق

يسبح في الهواء

Definitions

usual, not different

a force that pulls things to the ground

somebody who travels into space for a job

a journey when you visit many different places

طبيعي

الجاذبية

رائد فضاء

جولة / رحلة

different from others and better than usual

خاص / مميز

Listen and read.

Flying signs

- 1 She has moved her arm to the right, so she will fly **to the right**.

حركت ذراعها لليمين، لذلك ستطير إلى اليمين.



- 2 She has both arms above her head, so she will fly **higher**.

رفعت ذراعها فوق رأسها، لذلك سوف تطير لأعلى.



- 3 She has put her arms down by her sides, so she will fly **down again**.

وضعت ذراعها إلى أسفل على جانبيها، لذلك ستهبط مرة أخرى.



- 4 She has moved her arm to the left, so she will fly **to the left**.

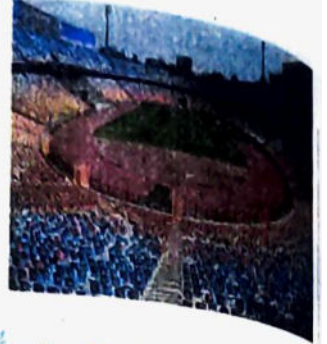
حركت ذراعها لليساار، لذلك ستطير إلى اليسار.



Listen and read.

Special shoes

It was the year 2122 and Hady and Hoda's grandpa was visiting them. Grandpa was an astronaut when he was younger. When he visited them, he always brought something interesting.



كان ذلك عام ٢١٢٢. كان الجد يزور هادي وهدي. كان الجد رائد فضاء عندما كان أصغر سنًا. وعندما كان يزورهم كان يجلب دائما شيئا مثيرا.

"Hello Grandpa!" said Hady. "Do you have something to show us?" asked Hoda. "I always bring you something, don't I? Look at these," "They don't look like normal shoes," said Hady. "You're right," Grandpa replied. "Let's go outside. I'll show you what the shoe can do." he said. He showed the children a pair of shoes. Hoda and Hady followed Grandpa out of the house to a hill. They were very excited. They sat down and Grandpa took three pairs of shoes from a bag.

قال هادي "مرحبًا أيها الجد!". سألت هدي "هل لديك شيء لترينا؟". قال الجد "أنا دائما أجلب لك شيئا، اليس كذلك؟ انظروا إلى هذه" وأظهر للأطفال زوجا من الأحذية. قال هادي: "لا يبدو مثل الأحذية العادية". أجاب الجد: "أنت على حق". "دعنا نذهب للخارج. سأريك ما يمكن أن تفعله الأحذية." اتبع هادي وهدي الجد إلى خارج المنزل ثم إلى تل. كانوا متحمسين جدا. جلسوا وأخذ الجد ثلاثة أزواج من الأحذية الحقيقية.

"Gravity usually pulls things to the ground," said Grandpa. "But these are special shoes. When you wear them, gravity does not pull you down. So children, if you could fly, what would you do?"

قال الجد: "عادة ما تسحب الجاذبية الأشياء إلى الأرض". "لكن هذه أحذية خاصة. عندما ترتديها، فإن الجاذبية لا تسحبك إلى أسفل. إذا يا أطفال، إذا كنتم تستطيعون الطيران، فماذا يمكنكم أن تفعلوا؟"

Lesson (4)

"I would fly over the stadium to watch my favorite football team," Hady said.

"I would fly over the sea," said Hoda. "Let's start with a tour of our city,"

Grandpa said. "Put these shoes on. Now, hit your left foot with your right

foot three times. One, two, three... Good. Look! You can fly!"

قال هادي "كنت سأطير فوق الملعب لمشاهدة فريق كرة القدم المفضل لدي". قالت هدى: "كنت سأطير

فوق البحر". "لنبدأ بجولة في مدينتنا"، قال الجد. "ارتدي هذه الأحذية. الآن، اضرب قدمك اليسرى بقدمك

اليمنى ثلاث مرات. واحد، اثنان، ثلاثة... جيد. انظروا يمكنك الطيران!"

The children flew up into the air. They could move right or left by moving

an arm to that side. If they put both their arms above their head, they flew

higher up. If they put their arms down by their sides, they flew down again.

Hoda and Hady loved flying. It was an amazing feeling. They could see all

the city from up there.

طار الأطفال في الهواء. يمكنهم التحرك يمينا أو يسارا عن طريق تحريك ذراع إلى هذا الجانب. إذا وضعوا

أذرعهم فوق رؤوسهم، طاروا لأعلى. إذا وضعوا أذرعهم على جانبهم، طاروا لأسفل مرة ثانية. أحب هادي

وهدي الطيران. لقد كان شعورا رائعا. يمكنهم رؤية كل المدينة من الأعلى هناك.

After ten minutes, Grandpa said, "OK children. Now we need to go down

to the ground again." When they were on the ground, Hoda asked, "Why

doesn't everybody have shoes like these?" "Because they are only for

astronauts!" said Grandpa. "And special people too, like my favorite

grandchildren!"

بعد عشر دقائق، قال الجد، "حسنا يا أطفال. الآن نحن بحاجة إلى النزول إلى الأرض مرة أخرى."

عندما كانوا على الأرض، سألت هدى، "لماذا لا يرتدي الجميع أحذية مثل هذه؟" قال الجد "لأنهم فقط

لرواد الفضاء!". "والأشخاص المميزون أيضا، مثل أحفادي المفضلين!"

Listen and read.



Gravity is what makes things fall to the ground. It is the force that makes leaves fall to the ground in fall and not float above the tree. When this boy jumps on the bed, gravity brings him down and stops him floating up into the air. It is also the force that keeps the planets moving around the sun.

إن الجاذبية هي التي تجعل الأشياء تسقط على الأرض. وهي القوة التي تجعل أوراق الشجر تسقط في الخريف على الأرض ولا تطير أعلى الشجر. وعندما يقفز هذا الولد على السرير تسحبه الجاذبية لأسفل وتمنعه من الطفو في الهواء. وهي أيضًا القوة التي تجعل الكواكب تدور حول الشمس.

Read and think.

What would happen if there was no gravity?

Everything would float up into the air.

What makes the parachute go down to the ground?

It's gravity.



Help your child read about gravity.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ عن الجاذبية.

General Activities

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Grandpa showed the children a pair of
a) shoes b) socks c) boots d) gloves
2. They don't look like shoes.
a) usual b) normal c) local d) unusual
3. They followed grandpa out of the house to a
a) hall b) hill c) club d) room
4. They were very
a) sad b) ugly c) kind d) excited

2 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

feeling - sides - higher - up - down

The children flew 1) into the air.
They could move right or left by moving an arm to that side. If they put both
their arms above their head, they flew 2) up.
If they put their arms down by their 3), they flew down again.
Hoda and Hady loved flying. It was an amazing 4)
They could see all the city from up there.

3 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. showed - a pair of - Grandpa - children - shoes - the - .
2. you - Do - something - to show - have - us - ?
3. above - The children - village - flying - the - enjoyed - .
4. fall - to - the ground - Leaves - in fall - .



Read the following text and answer the questions.

"Gravity usually pulls things to the ground," said Grandpa. "But these are special shoes. When you wear them, gravity does not pull you down. So children, if you could fly, what would you do?" "I would fly over the stadium to watch my favorite football team," Hady said. "I would fly over the sea," said Hoda. "Let's start with a tour of our city," Grandpa said. Put these shoes on. Now, hit your left foot with your right foot three times. One, two, three... Good. Look! You can fly!"

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Gravity usually things to the ground
a) pushes b) sells c) pulls d) buys
2. The underlined pronoun "them" refers to the
a) things b) shoes c) children d) cities
3. Grandpa's shoes are
a) special b) ordinary c) normal d) common

B) Answer the following questions.

4. Why would Hady fly over the stadium?

5. What's the main idea of the text?

Jobs

astronaut
engineer
architect

رائد فضاء web designer

مهندس pilot

مهندس معماري doctor

مصمم شبكات

طيار

طبيب

School Subjects

physics
chemistry
architecture

فيزياء science

كيمياء math

هندسة معمارية English

مادة العلوم

مادة الرياضيات

اللغة الانجليزية

Extra vocabulary

Mars
acceleration
skills
robot

كوكب المريخ health

سرعة office

مهارات medicine

إنسان آلي skateboard

صحة

مكتب

طب

نوح تلويح

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs

Present

Past

P.P

solve

affect

decide

end

organize

design

يحل solved

يؤثر على affected

يقرر decided

ينهي ended

ينظم organized

يصمم designed

solved

affected

decided

ended

organized

designed

Irregular verbs الافعال غير منتظمة

Unit (4)

Present

grow up
leave
give
speak
meet

Past

يُكَبِّر grew up
يُغَادِر left
يُعْطِي gave
يُتَحَدَّث spoke
يُقَابِل met

P.p

grown up
left
given
spoken
met

Important expressions and prepositions

do research
do things
work hard
in the day
across the world
work on a project
interested in + (noun / v + ing)
our own planet
International Space Station

يُجْرَى بحثًا close to
يَقُومُ بِعَمَلِ أَشْيَاءٍ get help from
يَعْمَلُ بِجِدٍ get a job
فِي النَّهَارِ work for
حَوْلَ الْعَالَمِ get sick

قَرِيبًا مِنْ
يَحْصِلُ عَلَى مَسَاعِدَةٍ مِنْ
يَحْصِلُ عَلَى وَظِيفَةٍ
يَعْمَلُ لَدِي
يُفَرِّضُ
يَعْمَلُ فِي مَشْرُوعٍ
مُهْتَمٌ بِ
كَوْكَبِنَا
مَحَطَّةُ الْفَضَاءِ الدُّوَلِيَّةِ

Definitions

pilot	a person who flies airplanes
astronaut	a person who works in space
engineer	a person who builds roads and bridges
aircraft = airplane	people can travel through the air on it
architect	a person who designs buildings and roads

Lesson (5)

Look and read.

1 I'm Amal. I want to be an **astronaut** because I'm interested in the stars and the planets. It is important to study other planets because it helps us understand our own planet, and this might help us solve some of Earth's problems. When you see videos of the International Space Station, it looks fun living without gravity – the people float all the time! I've read a lot about the planet Mars and the research scientists are doing. Maybe I can visit Mars one day!



أنا أمل، أريد أن أكون رائدة فضاء لأنني مهتمة بالنجوم والكواكب. من المهم دراسة الكواكب الأخرى لأنها تساعدنا في فهم كوكبنا، وهذا قد يساعدنا في حل بعض مشاكل الأرض. عندما تشاهد فيديوهات عن محطة الفضاء الدولية، يبدو مضحكًا العيش هناك بدون الجاذبية - الناس تطفو طوال الوقت! لقد قرأت الكثير عن كوكب المريخ والأبحاث التي يقوم بها العلماء. ربما يمكنني زيارة المريخ يومًا ما!

2 My name is Jana. When I grow up, I'd love to be an **engineer** like my Uncle Wael. His job sounds really interesting. Did you know that people who do this job don't only help to build roads and bridges? They also help make things such as skateboards!



Uncle Wael says that you need to understand science to do this job. For example, you need to know how friction and different forces affect how skateboards move.

اسمي جنى. عندما أكبر، أود أن أكون مهندسة مثل عمي وائل. وظيفته تبدو مثيرة للاهتمام حقًا. هل تعلم أن الأشخاص الذين يقومون بهذه المهمة لا يساعدون فقط في بناء الطرق والجسور؟ إنهم يساعدون أيضًا في صنع أشياء مثل ألواح التزلج! يقول العم وائل أنك بحاجة إلى فهم العلوم للقيام بهذه المهمة. على سبيل المثال، تحتاج إلى معرفة كيف يؤثر الاحتكاك والقوى المختلفة على كيفية تحرك ألواح التزلج.

③ I'm Karim. I decided I wanted to be a pilot when I went to an airplane festival with my mom and dad. We saw lots of different planes flying in the sky, and some of them did amazing moves, flying close to the ground, and then flying around in a circle.

The planes flew in groups, sometimes with their wings very close together. It looked amazing. There was also a small museum, and I learned how air resistance helps the planes to stay in the air!



أنا كريم. قررت أنني أريد أن أصبح طيارا عندما ذهبت إلى مهرجان للطائرات مع أمي وأبي. رأينا الكثير من الطائرات المختلفة تحلق في السماء، وبعضها قام بحركات مذهلة، وحلقت بالقرب من الأرض، ثم حلقت في دائرة. حلقت الطائرات في مجموعات، وأحيانا تكون أجنحتها قريبة جدا من بعضها البعض. بدا الأمر مذهلا. كان هناك أيضا متحف صغير، وتعلمت كيف تساعد مقاومة الهواء الطائرات على البقاء في الهواء!

Read the article about Sherif.

Meet Sherif, 24, from Cairo. He's an engineer who has started his own company.

تعرف على شريف، ٢٤ عاما، من القاهرة. إنه مهندس والذي بدأ شركته الخاصة.

Sherif wanted to be an engineer when he was 10 years old. He always watched TV programs about robots, and he loved making things.



د شريف أن يكون مهندسا عندما كان عمره عشر سنوات. كان دائما يشاهد البرامج التلفزيونية عن روبوتات، وكان يحب صنع الأشياء.

When he was 13, he started helping a robot design company online. He did his school work in the day and in the evening he worked on his robot projects. This experience helped him to start his own company.

عندما كان عمره ثلاثة عشر عامًا، بدأ في مساعدة شركة تصميم روبوت عبر الإنترنت. قام بعمله المدرسي في الليل وفي المساء كان يعمل في مشاريع الروبوت الخاصة به. ساعدته هذه التجربة على بدء شركته الخاصة.

Lesson (5)

He said that the science and math lessons at school helped him to learn how to solve problems. He also found English very useful as it helps him work with people across the world. He is now learning Japanese so he can talk to people in Japan.

قال إن دروس العلوم والرياضيات في المدرسة ساعدته على تعلم كيفية حل المشكلات. كما وجد أن اللغة الإنجليزية مفيدة للغاية لأنها تساعد على العمل مع الناس في جميع أنحاء العالم. وهو الآن يتعلم اللغة اليابانية حتى يتمكن من التحدث إلى الناس في اليابان.

"For me, a job is about doing things which help other people around the world," he says.

يقول: "بالنسبة لي، الوظيفة هي ما يتعلق بفعل الأشياء التي تساعد الآخرين في جميع أنحاء العالم."

Ask and answer.

What job do you want to do when you are older? Why?



I want to be a **doctor** because
I want to help people who are **sick**.



I want to be an **architect** because I want
to **design** new buildings.



Did you know ?

On Earth, **gravity** pushes our **bones** together.
There is no gravity in **space**, so some bones move apart.
So astronauts who spend six months on the International
Space Station can grow 3% taller!
(They return to their usual size back on Earth.)



General Activities

من الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- Sherif wanted to be a/an
a) doctor b) engineer c) teacher d) vet
- He always watched TV programs about
a) animals b) sports c) robots d) birds
- He loved things.
a) buying b) selling c) making d) playing
- When he was, he started helping a robot design company online.
a) ten b) eleven c) twelve d) thirteen

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- I want to be a/an because I'm interested in the stars and the planets.
a) pilot b) doctor c) engineer d) astronaut
- When there's no gravity, people all the time.
a) float b) caught c) bought d) boat
- help make things such as skateboards.
a) Teachers b) Engineers c) Pilots d) Astronauts
- To be a good engineer, you need to learn and math.
a) Arabic b) music c) science d) Japanese
- I decided to be a/an when I went to an airplane festival.
a) astronaut b) engineer c) pilot d) architect
- helps the planes to stay in the air.
a) Gravity b) Friction c) Air resistance d) Floating

3 Order the words to make correct sentences.

- skills - She - computer - good - has - .
.....
- new - buildings - An architect - designs - .
.....
- can - We - on - travel - an aircraft - .
.....

Lesson (5)

Read the following text and answer the questions.

Sara wants to be a pilot. She wants an exciting job. She enjoys traveling and she likes visiting new places. She would like to work as part of a team. Her friend Dalia wants to be a doctor. She's interested in people's health and why people get sick. She likes working with people and she thinks she'd like to work in medicine.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Sara wants to be a/an
a) doctor b) engineer c) pilot d) astronaut
2. Dalia is interested in people's
a) money b) stories c) health d) education
3. The underlined pronoun "She" refers to
a) Sara b) Mona c) Dalia d) Noha

Answer the following questions.

1. What does Sara enjoy doing?
.....
2. Who does Dalia like working with?
.....

5 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words.

Your future job

Guiding words:

(science - engineer - buildings - bridges - skateboards)

Lesson (6)

WRITING AN EMAIL

How to write an email

كيف تكتب بريدًا إلكترونيًا

TIP!

Remember, when you write an email to a friend, you can use informal language. You can write how you would speak to them, and start and end in a friendly way. For example:

- ◆ Start the email with **Hi!** or **Hello!** and **How are you?**
- ◆ Say what you want to do and why.
- ◆ Use sequencing words: **First**, **then**, and **finally** to order the information.
- ◆ Write two or three paragraphs.
- ◆ End with **Bye for now!** or **See you soon!**

Read the email.



From : Maged
To : Asser
Subject : A job in the future

Hi Asser,

Are you enjoying the weekend at your grandparents?

You asked me what job I want to do in the future and I've decided now.

I want to be a scientist and study space. I'm really interested in space and

I want to understand it better. There's still so much that we don't know.

I talked to my parents about what I need to do. This is what they said:

First, I need to do well at school, especially in science.

مرحباً آسر،

هل تستمتع بعطلة نهاية الأسبوع عند أجدادك؟ لقد سألتني عن الوظيفة التي أريد القيام بها في المستقبل وقررت الآن. أريد أن أكون عالماً وأدرس الفضاء. أنا مهتم حقاً بالفضاء وأريد أن أفهمه بشكل أفضل. لا يزال هناك الكثير الذي لا نعرفه. تحدثت إلى والدي حول ما يجب أن أفعله. هذا ما قالوه: أولاً، أنا بحاجة إلى القيام بعمل جيد في المدرسة، وخاصة في مجال العلوم.

Lesson (6)

Then, I need to go to university and study subjects like chemistry, math, and physics. Do you know what physics is? It's all about energy, space, and time, so it's useful if you want to study the stars and planets.

بعد ذلك، أحتاج إلى الذهاب إلى الجامعة ودراسة مواد مثل الكيمياء والرياضيات والفيزياء. هل تعرف ما هي الفيزياء؟ الأمر كله يتعلق بالطاقة والفضاء والوقت، لذا فهو مفيد إذا كنت ترغب في دراسة النجوم والكواكب.

Finally, I need to find a job at a place where people study space, like a university. Then I can work on projects and learn from other scientists. What do you think? Do you know what job you want to do in the future?

Bye for now!

Maged

أخيراً، أحتاج إلى العثور على وظيفة في مكان يدرس فيه الناس الفضاء، مثل الجامعة. ثم يمكنني العمل على المشاريع والتعلم من علماء آخرين. ما رأيك؟ هل تعرف الوظيفة التي تريد القيام بها في المستقبل؟

وداعاً الآن!

ماجد

Answer the following questions.

1. Does Maged want to go into space in the future?

2. What will he do when he leaves school?

3. What is the most important school subject for him?

General Activities

1 Write an email of **FIFTY (50)** words.

to your friend Omar telling him about your future job.

Guiding words:

doctor - biology - science - hospital - sick

From :

To :

Subject:

2 Complete the email with words from the box.

Bye for now - Finally - First - Hello - How are you - Then

From : Reem

To : Sherifa

Subject: Future Job

1) Sherifa,

2) ? Are you having fun on vacation?

I'm thinking about the future and I've decided what I want to do. I want to be an architect and design buildings. I'm really interested in designing buildings with renewable resources. I think we need to design better buildings in the future.

I talked to my teachers about what I need to do.

3), I need to work hard at school, especially in subjects like math, physics, art, and design. 4), I need to go to university and study architecture. At university, I'll learn how to design lots of different buildings.

5), I need to find a job as an architect. I want to work with people who design apartments to live in. I'm not interested in designing big hotels or offices. What do you think? Do you know what job you want to do in the future?

6)

Reem

Lesson (1)

Look and say.



wings

أجنحة

feathers

ريش

land

يهبط

Extra vocabulary

ground
(be) called
famous
century
fields

أرض	tower	بح	frightened	خائف
يُسمى / يُدعى	builder	عامل بناء	nervous	متوتر
مشهور	inventor	مخترع	patient	صبور
قرن (١٠٠ عام)	water clock	ساعة مائية	surprised	مندعش
حقول	confused	مرتبك / مشوش	worried	قلق

Conjugation of verbs

Present	Past	P.P	Present	Past	P.P
land	land ^{ed}	land ^{ed}	invent	invent ^{ed}	invent ^{ed}
laugh	laugh ^{ed}	laugh ^{ed}	include	include ^d	include ^d
climb	climb ^{ed}	climb ^{ed}	hurt	hurt	hurt

Important expressions and prepositions

walk through

يمشي عبر

made of

مصنوع من

find out

يكشف

run back down

يجري عائدا لأسفل.

Definitions

feathers	soft things that cover a bird	ريش
land	move down until something is on the ground	يهبط
invent	make or design something for the first time	يخترع
builder	a person who builds houses, schools, etc.	عامل بناء
inventor	a person who makes or designs new things	مخترع

Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Listen and Read.

Ali was ten years old and he lived in the 9th century. He worked on his father's farm. Every day that summer, he saw a man walk through the fields towards a tower. The man was old but looked strong. One day, Ali decided to talk to the man.

بلغ علي عشر سنوات من العمر وعاش في القرن التاسع. كان يعمل في مزرعة والده. كل يوم في ذلك الصيف، يرى رجلاً يمشي عبر الحقول باتجاه برج. كان الرجل كبيراً في السن لكنه بدأ قوياً. في أحد الأيام، قرر التحدث إلى الرجل.

"Excuse me, where are you going?" Ali asked.

"I'm working at the old tower." the man answered.

"Are you a builder?" Ali asked.

سأله علي "عفواً، إلى أين أنت ذاهب؟". أجاب الرجل "أنا أعمل في البرج القديم". سأله علي "هل أنت عامل بناء؟".

The man laughed. "No, I'm an inventor. I'm 65 but I don't want to stop working. There are always new things to find out!"

ضحك الرجل وقال. "لا، أنا مخترع. أنا عمري 65 عاماً لكنني لا أريد التوقف عن العمل. هناك دائماً أشياء جديدة لاكتشافها!"

"What are you working on now?" asked Ali.

"I'm trying to find out how to fly like a bird." the man said, and walked away.

The next day, Ali decided to follow. He was carrying something.

"What are you carrying?" asked Ali.

سأله علي "ما الذي تعمل عليه الآن؟". قال الرجل "أحاول معرفة كيفية الطيران مثل الطيور". وشمشي بعيداً. في اليوم التالي، قرر علي أن يتبعه وكان يحمل شيئاً. سأله علي "ماذا تحمل؟".

"These are my wings. They are made of wood and feathers." he said.

"Are you going to use them to fly?" asked Ali.

"Well, why don't you come with me? Then we'll know, won't we?" he said.

قال الرجل "هذان هما جفاتي. وهما مصنوعان من الخشب والريش". سأله علي. "هل ستستخدمهما للطيران؟". قال الرجل "حسناً، لماذا لا تأتي معي؟ ثم سنعرف، أليس كذلك؟".

Lesson (7)

They walked to the tower and climbed to the top. Ali watched as the man put on his wings. "OK, here I go!" said the man, and he jumped from the tower! Ali was amazed because the man flew slowly to the ground! He did not see him land.

ساروا إلى البرج وصعدوا إلى الأعلى. شاهد علي الرجل وهو يرتدي جناحيه. قال الرجل "حسناً، ها أنا ذا"، وقفز من البرج! اندمض علي لأن الرجل طار ببطء على الأرض! لم يره وهو يهبط.

Ali ran back down the tower and soon found the man. He was sitting in the ground. He looked unhappy.

"Are you ok?" said Ali.

"No! That hurt!" he said.

"But you flew! I saw you!" said Ali.

ركض علي إلى أسفل البرج وسرعان ما وجد الرجل. كان جالساً على الأرض. بدا غير سعيد.

سأله علي "هل أنت بخير؟" قال الرجل. "لا هذا مؤلم!" قال علي "لكنك طرت! رأيته!"

"I flew but I did not land correctly," said the man. "I need to study birds better to find out how they land without hurting themselves."

أنا طرت لكنني لم أهبط بشكل صحيح. أريد أن أدرس الطيور بشكل أفضل لمعرفة كيف يهبطون بدون إيذاء أنفسهم.

Ali later found out that the man called Abbas Ibn Firnas. He was an important person who invented many things, including water clocks.

اكتشف علي لاحقاً أن الرجل يدعى عباس بن فرناس. لقد كان شخصاً مهماً والذي اخترع أشياء كثيرة، بما في ذلك الساعات المائية.

But Ali did not know that in the future. Abbas Ibn Firnas became very famous because he was probably the first person ever to fly using wings.

لكن علي لم يرد أن يعرف مدى ذلك في المستقبل. أصبح عباس بن فرناس مشهوراً جداً لأنه ربما كان أول شخص يطير على الإطلاق باستخدام الأجنحة.

General Activities

مع الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- Ali is years old.
a) 8 b) 9 c) 10 d) 11
- Ali lives in the 9th
a) decade b) century c) month d) year
- The wings were made of and feathers.
a) wood b) glass c) plastic d) iron
- Abbas Ibn Firnas was the man to fly.
a) third b) second c) fourth d) first

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- We got a/an to build our house.
a) doctor b) builder c) pilot d) engineer
- Abbas Ibn Firnas many useful inventions.
a) invented b) wrote c) read d) spoke
- To means to move down until something is on the ground.
a) hand b) land c) band d) run
- Birds have all over their bodies.
a) feathers b) meat c) skin d) bones
- A/An is a person who makes or designs new things.
a) inventor b) artist c) doctor d) pilot

3 Order the words to make correct sentences.

- was - Abbas - inventor - Firnas - an - Ibn - .
- used - wings - He - two - fly - to - birds - like - .
- water - He - clocks - invented - .

Lesson (7)

4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Abbas Ibn Firnas was an important person who invented many things, including water clocks. He was very old but he worked hard. He didn't want to stop working because of his age. He was the first person ever to fly using wings. So he became very famous.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- Clocks tell us the
a) time b) place c) weather d) action
- Ibn Firnas became famous because he was the first man to
a) read b) write c) draw d) fly
- The underlined word "old" here is the opposite of
a) big b) small c) young d) new

B) Answer the following questions.

- What was Abbas Ibn Firnas?
.....
- Did he stop working when he became old?
.....

5 Write a text of **FIFTY (50)** words.

Abbas Ibn Firnas

Guiding words:

(inventor - 9th century - fly - feathers - famous)

Writing Corner

My new bike

Last week my grandpa bought me a new bike. It was a present for my birthday. It has two wheels, pedals and brakes. To make it move, I have to push the pedals. It moves with push force. When I want to slow it down or stop it, I use the brakes. To move it faster, I push the pedals quickly. I like riding my new bike very much.

A dart paper airplane

To make a dart paper airplane, take a piece of paper and fold it in half vertically. Crease it. Then open the paper. Fold over the top two corners. After that, turn the paper over. Fold it in half and crease the top of it. Then fold it down again and crease it again. Finally your dart is ready to fly!

From : Safia
To : Anas
Subject : A famous person

Hi Anas,
How are you? I hope you are fine. I want to tell you about a famous person I read about. His name is Abbas Ibn Firnas. He was an inventor. He invented many things like the water clocks. He was the first man to fly. He used wings made of wood and feathers.
Bye for now!
Safia

From : Seif
To : Amira
Subject : My future job

Hi Amira,
How are you? I want to tell you about the job I'd like to do in the future. I want to be an astronaut. I like reading about stars and planets very much. I like watching the stars. In space there's no gravity. I'll float in space. What about you?
See you soon.
Seif

Review on Unit (4)

Forces

bike	دراجة	friction	احتكاك
brake	فرامل	gravity	الجاذبية (الأرضية)
wheel	عجلة	hook	خطاف
speed	سرعة	spring	زنبرك
push force	قوة الدفع	rope	حبل
pull force	قوة السحب	tire / tyre	إطار (العجلة)

School Subjects

physics	فيزياء	science	مادة العلوم
chemistry	كيمياء	math	مادة الرياضيات
architecture	هندسة معمارية	English	اللغة الانجليزية

Jobs

astronaut	رائد فضاء	web designer	مصمم شبكات
engineer	مهندس	pilot	طيار
architect	مهندس معماري	doctor	طبيب
builder	عامل بناء		

Paper airplane

Dart	سهم	crease	يجعد / يضغط على الثنية
Glider	طائرة شراعية	vertically	رأسياً
tip	طرف	wing	جناح

Question tag

السؤال المذيّل

✚ It has two parts.

يتكون من جزئين.

(1) a sentence , (2) question tag?

Usage

✚ We use it to check or confirm information.

نستخدم السؤال المذيّل للتحقق من المعلومات أو تأكيدها.

Form

✚ The question tag is formed of:

يتكون السؤال المذيّل من:

helping verb / modal verb + subject pronoun?

فعل مساعد

فعل ناقص

ضمير فاعل

Notes

① positive sentence , negative tag?

e.g. You live in Egypt, don't you?

② negative sentence , positive tag?

e.g. Ali didn't go home, did he?

③ We use a comma before the question tag.

e.g. He has played football, hasn't he?

Dictation on Unit (4)

Lesson (1)

دراجة	دراجة
دواسة / بدال	دواسة

Lesson (2)

إطارات	إطارات
حبل	حبل

Lesson (3)

طائرة ورقية	طائرة
سهم (طائرة ورقية)	سهم
طائرة شراعية	طائرة شراعية
تعليمات	تعليمات
راوية	راوية
مثلث	مثلث
العليا / علوي	العليا

Lesson (4)

رائد فضاء	رائد فضاء
خاص / مميز	خاص
ترامبولين (جهاز للقفز)	ترامبولين

Lesson (5)

رائد فضاء	رائد فضاء
فيزياء	فيزياء
هندسة معمارية	هندسة معمارية

Lesson (7)

أجنحة	أجنحة
ريش	ريش
يهبط	يهبط
قرن (١٠٠ سنة)	قرن (١٠٠ سنة)
حقول	حقول
بحر	بحر
البحر / داء	البحر / داء

Activities On Unit (4)

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب.

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. I usually get the to school.
a) train b) metro c) bus d) car
2. I opened the car and got in.
a) window b) door c) balcony d) tire
3. The car was traveling at 40 kilometers a/an
a) second b) minute c) hour d) week
4. I like it when takes me to school.
a) Dad b) Mom c) Uncle d) Aunt

2 Read and complete the text with words from the box:

own - making - programs - company - doctor

Shaimaa wanted to be an engineer when she was 7 years old. She watched TV 1) about robots, and she loved 2) things. When she was 11, she started helping a robot design 3) online. Shaimaa is 24. She has started her 4) company.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Abbas Ibn Firnas was an inventor. A long time ago, he invented many things, including water clocks. He also made some wings from wood and feathers. He then jumped from a tower and flew to the ground, but he didn't land well. Today, he is very famous because he was probably the first person ever to fly using wings.

Activities On Unit (4)

2) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Abbas Ibn Firnas was a/an
a) pilot b) astronaut c) inventor d) engineer
2. He invented water
a) books b) clocks c) locks d) socks
3. He made some wings from and feathers.
a) wool b) stone c) sand d) wood

3) Answer the following questions.

4. Where did he jump from?

5. Why is he famous today?

4

The Reader

A Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. The crocodile is a dangerous animal.
2. Gazelles can climb steep mountains.
3. Jubari looked for Donga.
4. The beach was too sandy.

☐
☐
☐
☐

B Complete the following sentences:

1. Jubari lived in Wadi
2. There were trees in the desert.

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- There is less friction when you walk on a carpet than on ice, there?
a) is b) isn't c) has d) hasn't
- You live in Tharwat Street,
a) do b) are c) don't d) aren't
- My sister will be 10 years old next month,
a) can b) will c) won't d) doesn't
- Your mom make lovely cakes, can't she?
a) can b) may c) will d) must
- I have never been to France,
a) have b) haven't c) do d) don't
- Ali go home, did he?
a) don't b) doesn't c) didn't d) isn't

6 Order the words to make correct sentences.

- use - You - force - jump - a push - to - .
.....
- speed - over - Without - fall - will - bike - the - you - .
.....
- interested - planets - I - am - stars - in - and - .
.....

7 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words.

Gravity

Guiding words:

(pull - ground - down - float)

Activities (1) On Review (2)

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب.

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. An oasis is a place in the which has lots of natural resources.
a) park b) desert c) zoo d) bank
2. People have lived in these oases for of years.
a) millions b) hundreds c) thousands d) tens
3. is very important to grow crops.
a) Industry b) Agriculture c) Sport d) Mining
4. People can grow lots of different fruits and
a) vegetables b) cotton c) rice d) wheat

2 Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

job - engineer - factory - luck - doctor

- Mona** : What would you like to do in the future?
Soha : I'd like to be an 1)
Mona : Why do you like this 2)?
Soha : It's fantastic and I like maths.
Mona : Where will you work?
Soha : In a 3)
Mona : I wish you good 4)
Soha : Thanks a lot.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Abbas Ibn Firnas invented many things. One of his inventions was a form of water clock called Al-Maqata. When he lived in the ninth century, there were no watches or phones! People looked at the sun, moon, and stars to tell the time, but this didn't work inside buildings or on cloudy days. So, Abbas Ibn Firnas invented a different kind of clock. It didn't use the sun, moon, or stars - it used another natural resource - water!

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Abbas Ibn Firnas invented a clock that used
a) milk b) water c) tea d) honey
2. In the century, there were no watches or phones.
a) 18th b) 17th c) 9th d) 20th
3. The word **century** means one years.
a) decade b) hundred c) thousand d) million

B) Answer the following questions.

4. What does the underlined pronoun "**he**" refer to?

.....

5. What was the name of the water clock?

.....



The Reader

A Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. Wadi El Gemal was a perfect place for gazelles.
2. The crocodile was dangerous.
3. Jubari found wadi of the gazelles.
4. Jubari wasn't brave.

B Complete the following sentences:

1. Subira taught Jubari to if he met a dangerous animal
2. The offered Jubari some seagrass

Review (2)

5

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. I have money, he'll buy a new bike.
a) have b) has c) had d) having
2. She is very happy, she?
a) is b) was c) has d) isn't
3. If we to an oasis, we would see plants and trees.
a) go b) goes c) went d) going
4. They like museums, they?
a) do b) don't c) doesn't d) are
5. She said she like pizza.
a) isn't b) didn't c) won't d) hasn't
6. Fares said he usually to the sports center.
a) goes b) will go c) is going d) went

6

Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. pedals - Without - will - the - fall - bike - over - using - you - the - .
2. a rough - has - A glass - texture - window - .
3. as - used - They - honey - a medicine - .

7

Write a text of FIFTY (50) words.

A job you'd like to do

Guiding words:

(grow up - would - architect - houses - buildings)

Activities (2) On Review (2)

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب.

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. was another very important metal.
a) Copper b) Gold c) Silver d) Iron
2. It was easy to copper.
a) break b) bend c) heat d) boil
3. People used it to make
a) spoons b) bowls c) tools d) forks
4. We can see a lot of these objects in museums.
a) Spanish b) English c) French d) Egyptian

2 Read and complete the text with words from the box:

fertile - Egypt - Agriculture - crops - metal.

Did you know that ancient Egypt was very successful because it had good natural resources? 1) was a very important part of the economy of ancient 2) The Nile flooded every year and made the soil 3) Farmers grew lots of different 4) , such as cotton and rice.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

My class has just come back from our school visit to Wadi el Gemal. We learned a lot about the ecosystem there. It's very hot and dry, but dorcas gazelles can live there. In summer they eat daffodils. They also eat the leaves of the acacia trees, which give them food and enough water. So, dorcas gazelles never need to drink. The gazelles eat the acacia seeds and take them to new places. Then more acacia trees grow. So, gazelles are an important part of the ecosystem.

Review (2)

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. My class has just come back from our school to Wadi el Gemal.
a) club b) visit c) lab d) library
2. It isn't in Wadi el Gemal.
a) cold b) hot c) sunny d) heat
3. The underlined word "they" refers to
a) schools b) camels c) classes d) gazelles

B) Answer the following questions.

4. Why don't gazelles need to drink?

5. What do gazelles eat?



The Reader

A Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. Jubari was a brave gazelle.
2. Jubari met a turtle on the beach.
3. Donga eats vegetables.
4. Subira is Jubari's sister.

☐
☐
☐
☐
☐

B Complete the following sentences:

1. Nasser is man-made.
2. Jubari met an in Gebel Elba.

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- If we to an oasis, we would see plants and trees.
a) go b) went c) goes d) will go
- Fares said he ride a bike.
a) will b) can c) could d) can't
- They like museums, they?
a) are b) aren't c) do d) don't
- I beans if I lived on a farm.
a) grows b) would grow c) grow d) will grow
- They said they going to buy a house.
a) was b) has c) were d) had
- The sky is going to rain, it?
a) isn't b) is c) has d) hasn't

6 Order the words to make correct sentences.

- friends - Waleed - with - played - football - his - .
- into space - stops - Gravity - people - flying up - .
- you - would - What - you do - if - had - money - a lot of - ?

7 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words.

Salt

Guiding words:

(important - resource - sold - keep food - fresh - useful - lakes)

FICTION READER:

JUBARI SEARCHES FOR HOME

جوباري يبحث عن موطن



BY JENNIFER FARMER

The Story

JUBARI SEARCHES FOR HOME

Characters



Jubari (son)



Subira (mother)



dugong



turtle



ibex



crocodile

The Places



Wadi el Gemal



Ras Hankorab



Gebel Elba



The Red Sea mangrove



Lake Nasser

The plot

حبكة القصة

Jubari was a brave young dorcas gazelle. He was born in Wadi el Gemal. He left home to look for the "Wadi of the Gazelles". He went to lots of places and met many different animals. Jubari returned home because it is the best place to live in.

كان جوباري غزالاً صغيراً شجاعاً. ولد في "وادي الجمال". غادر الموطن ليبحث عن "وادي الغزلان". ذهب لأماكن كثيرة وقابل حيوانات عديدة مختلفة ولكنه عاد لموطنه لأنه أفضل مكان يمكنه العيش فيه.

What is the moral of the story?

ما الدرس المستفاد من القصة؟

- Animals are happier in the ecosystem they are born in.

تعيش الحيوانات أسعد في البيئة التي ولدت بها.

Picture Dictionary

acacia tree

شجرة السنط



An acacia tree is a species of tree which grows in hot dry places.

brave

شجاع



If you are brave, you are not afraid of dangerous or difficult situations.

daffodil

زهرة الترحس



Daffodils are species of yellow flower which grow from bulbs.

hoof/ hooves

حوافر



A hoof is the hard foot of an animal. For example, horses, goats, and cows have hooves.

Nubian ibex

الماعز النوبي



The Nubian ibex is a species of goat which lives in the mountains of northern Africa and the Middle East.

salty

طعام مملح



Food with a lot of salt in it tastes salty.

seagrass

أعشاب بحرية



Seagrass is a species of plant which grows under the sea.

steep

منحدر



A steep hill goes up or down very quickly, and so it is difficult to climb.

The beginning

Jubari the dorcas gazelle was born in Wadi el Gemal in Egypt's Eastern desert. For the first year of his life, Jubari followed his mother, Subira. She showed him which plants to eat and where to rest on hot days.



ولد غزال الصحراء "جوباري" في وادي الجمال في الصحراء الشرقية بمصر. وفي أول عام من حياته، رافق "جوباري" أمه "سوبرا" وأوضحت له أي النباتات يأكلها وأين يرتاح في الأيام الحارة.

Jubari was very brave. He wanted to go everywhere and play with all the animals. However, Subira taught him which animals were dangerous and how to stay away from predators. He learned to run away very quickly.



كان جوباري شجاعاً جداً. وأراد أن يذهب إلى كل مكان ويلعب مع جميع الحيوانات. ومع ذلك، علمته سوبرا أي الحيوانات خطيرة وكيف يبقى بعيداً عن الحيوانات المفترسة. وتعلم أن يهرب بسرعة جداً.



One day, Jubari and Subira were looking for food. Jubari asked his mother, "Mom, what is this place called?"

Subira answered, "This is Wadi el Gemal, son. It means "Wadi of the Camels."

"Why do we live in the Wadi of the Camels?" Jubari said. "We are gazelles."

Subira laughed. "It's only a name, son. Many animals live here. Wadi el Gemal is the perfect place for gazelles."

وفي أحد الأيام كان "جوباري" و "سوييرا" يبحثان عن الطعام. وسأل جوباري أمه قائلاً: "أمي، ماذا يسمى هذا المكان؟"
فردت سوييرا قائلة: "إنه وادي الجمال يا بني. وهذا يعني "وادي به جمال".
قال جوباري: "ولم نعيش في وادي الجمال؟ نحن غزلان". ضحكت سوييرا وقالت "إنه مجرد اسم يا بني. فالكثير من
الحيوانات تعيش هنا. وادي الجمال مكان مثالي للغزلان".



"Why?" Jubari said. "Well," said his mother. "There are special plants here. First, there's our favorite food, the desert daffodil! And there is also the acacia tree. Their leaves give us food and water all year round, so we never need to drink. And the acacia trees need us, too."

"Why do they need us?" Jubari said.

"We eat their seeds and take them to new places. Then more acacia trees grow."

قال جوباري، لم؟ قالت أمه "يوجد نباتات مميزة هنا. أولاً، يوجد طعامنا المفضل، إنها زهور النرجس الصحراوية! كما يوجد أشجار السنط. وأوراقها تمدنا بالطعام والماء على مدار العام لذلك لا نحتاج أبداً لأن نشرب. وكذلك فإن أشجار السنط تحتاجنا أيضاً." قال جوباري: "ولم تحتاجنا أشجار السنط؟" قالت الأم: "نحن نأكل بذورها وننقل هذه البذور لأماكن أخرى. وبهذا تنمو المزيد من أشجار السنط."

"I understand," said Jubari.

"But is there a place called 'Wadi of the Gazelles'?"

"I don't know," said his mother.

"I am going to look for it," said Jubari.

"OK," said his mother. "But remember all the things I have taught you and come back soon!"



قال جوباري: "لقد فهمت، ولكن هل يوجد مكان يسمى وادي الغزلان؟" قالت أمه: "أنا لا أعرف." قال جوباري: "سأبحث عن ذلك المكان." قالت أمه، حسناً، لكن تذكر كل الأشياء التي علمتُك إياها وعد سريعاً."



Activities

1 Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. Jubari was born in Wadi el Gemal.
2. Jubari and Subira were looking for food.
3. Subira taught Jubari which animals were dangerous.
4. Wadi el Gemal isn't the perfect place for gazelles.
5. The acacia trees leaves give gazelles food and water.
6. Acacia trees don't need gazelles.



2 Read and complete the sentences.

1. Jubari was born in
2. When Jubari was young, Subira taught him which to eat.
3. Subira showed Jubari where to rest on days.
4. Jubari and Subira's favorite food was
5. They got enough water from

3 Answer the following questions.

1. What did Jubari the gazelle learn from his mother?
.....
2. What does Wadi el Gemal mean in English?
.....
3. What do Jubari and his mother eat in the Wadi ?
.....
4. What do Jubari and his mother drink in the Wadi ?
.....
5. How do gazelles help the acacia trees?
.....
6. Why does Jubari leave the Wadi ?
.....

The middle

Jubari decided to go east. He was excited, so he ran very quickly. Soon, he saw some new kinds of trees. He walked into the trees and stopped. His hooves were under water! Jubari was thirty, so he tried to drink. "Yuck!" he said. The water was very, very salty. Then he heard a voice. "You can't drink that water! It's sea water."



قرر جوباري أن يتجه شرقاً. كان متحمساً لذلك جرى بسرعة. وبعد قليل رأى بعض أنواع الأشجار الجديدة، ومشى بين الأشجار ثم توقف. كانت حوافره تحت الماء وكان عطشاً، لذلك حاول أن يشرب وقال مشمئزاً "يوك!" لقد كان الماء مالحة جداً جداً، ثم سمع صوت يقول "لا يمكنك أن تشرب من هذا الماء! إنه ماء بحر".

Jubari looked and saw a big white animal in the water. It was looking at him. "I'm Donga. I'm a dugong. I live here in the mangrove forest by the Red Sea." "I'm thirsty," said Jubari.



"Would you like some of my seagrass?" said Donga. Jubari tried the seagrass, but it was very salty, too. "Thank you," he said. "But the mangrove forest is too salty for me! Do you know where I can find the 'Wadi of the Gazelles'?" "I'm sorry," said Donga. "I don't know."

نظر جوباري ووجد حيواناً ضيقاً أبيضاً في الماء. وكان ينظر إليه. قال الحيوان "أنا دونجا أنا حيوان الأطوم وأنا أعيش هنا في غابة المنجروف بالقرب من البحر الأحمر". قال جوباري "أنا عطشان". قال دونجا "أتود بعضاً من عشبى البحري؟" قام جوباري بأكل العشب البحري لكنه كان مالحة جداً أيضاً بالنسبة لى. وقال "أشكرك، لكن غابة المنجروف مالحة جداً أيضاً. هل تعرف أين أجد وادي الغزلان؟" قال دونجا "أسف، أنا لا أعرف".

Help your child read and follow the events of the story.

أحداث القصة.

AL-BAHER

Next, Jubari ran north. He ran and ran, soon he came to a place where the ground was white, and very soft. He walked slowly. His hooves were going into the ground.



Then he heard a voice.

"Please don't walk here. My eggs are in the sand."

بعد ذلك جرى جوباري تجاه الشمال، وجرى، وجرى. وبعد قليل وصل إلى مكان أرضه بيضاء وناعمة جدًا. ومشى ببطء. وغاصت حوافره في الأرض. ثم سمع صوتًا يقول "من فضلك لا تمشي هنا فإن بيضي في الرمال."

Jubari looked. It was a brown turtle.

"I'm sorry," said Jubari.

"What is this place?"

"It's my home," said the turtle.

"Ras Hankorab beach."

"It's very nice," said Jubari.

"But it's not a good place for gazelles. We can't run fast here because the sand is too soft."



نظر جوباري. وكان ذلك صوت سلحفاة بنية. قال جوباري "أنا آسف. ما هذا المكان؟" قالت السلحفاة "هذا شاطئ رأس حانكوراب." قال جوباري "إنه مكان لطيف جدًا. لكنه ليس مكانًا جيدًا للغزلان. فلا يمكننا أن نجري بسرعة هنا لأن الرمال ناعمة جدًا."

JUBARI SEARCHES FOR HOME

Jubari decided to go south. He ran and ran. He came to some mountains. "I might see the 'Wadi of Gazelles' from the top," he thought. Jubari climbed the biggest mountain. It was very steep. His legs became very tired.



قرر جوباري أن يتجه للجنوب وجرى وجرى. حتى وصل إلى بعض الجبال واعتقد أنه ربما يرى وادي الغزلان من على القمة. تسلق جوباري أكبر جبل وكان شديد الانحدار. وأصاب سيقانه الإرهاق الشديد.

Then he saw an animal, a Nubian ibex. Jubari said, "Hello! Have you been to the top of this mountain?" "Yes," said the ibex. "This is Gebel Elba. It's my home."



"It's too steep for my legs," said Jubari. "Can you see the 'Wadi of the Gazelles' from the top?" "I don't know that place," said the ibex. "But I can see a very big lake to the west!"

ثم رأى الوعل النوبي. قال جوباري "مرحبًا! هل كنت على قمة هذا الجبل؟ قال الوعل "نعم. هذا جبل عليه. إنه موطنى" قال جوباري أنه شديد الانحدار بالنسبة لساقى؛ هل يمكنك أن ترى وادي الغزلان من على القمة؟" قال الوعل "أنا لا أعرف هذا المكان." لكن يمكنني أن أرى بحيرة ضخمة باتجاه الغرب."

Jubari thought, "I've gone east.
I've gone south and north, but
haven't gone west."

He ran and ran. After a long time,
he came to a very big lake.

"What is this place?" he said.

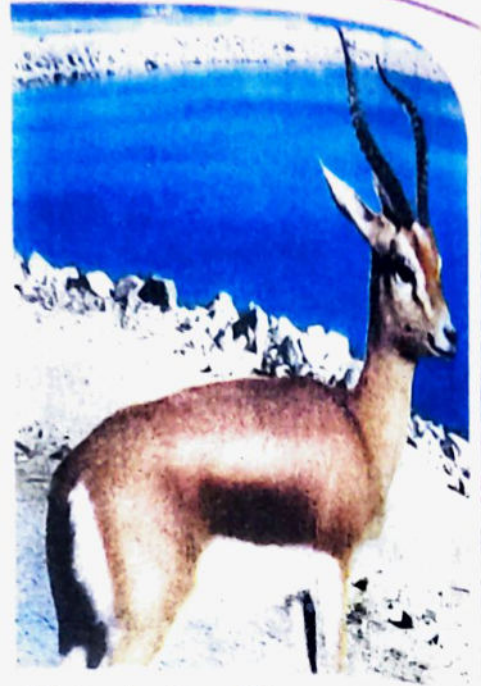
"This is Lake Nasser," said a voice.

"It's a man-made lake. The people
made it because they needed water.

It's an important resource for them.

But delicious gazelles don't need water to drink, do they?"

فكر جوباري قائلاً "لقد ذهبت تجاه الشرق، وذهبت تجاه الجنوب والشمال لكن لم اذهب تجاه الغرب" ثم جرى
وجرى. وبعد مدة طويلة وصل إلى بحيرة ضخمة جدًا وقال "ما هذا المكان؟" ثم سمع صوتًا يقول "هذه بحيرة ناصر.
إنها بحيرة من صنع الإنسان. لقد صنعها الناس لأنهم كانوا في حاجة إلى الماء. وهذا مصدر هام لهم. لكن الغزلان لذيذة
الطعم لا يحتاجون إلى الماء، أليس كذلك؟"



Jubari couldn't see who was
speaking. Then a dead tree in the
water moved. It wasn't a tree!

It was an animal!"

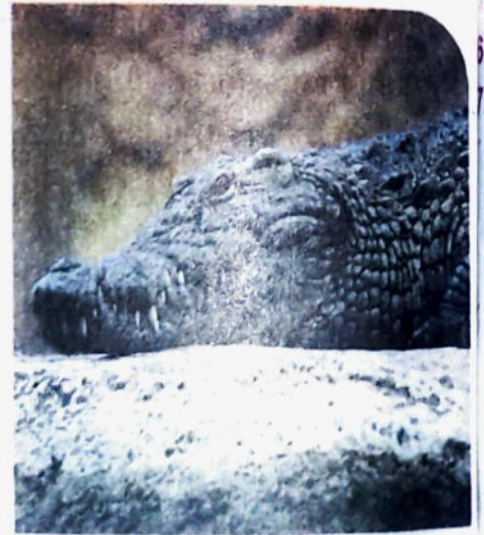
"What are you?" said Jubari.

"I'm a crocodile," said the animal.

"This is my home, and I'm hungry."

Jubari's mother taught him not to

stay near animals with big teeth, It was too dangerous!



لم يستطع جوباري أن يرى المتحدث. ثم تحركت شجرة ميتة في الماء. إنها لم تكن شجرة! إنها كانت حيوان، قال
جوباري "من أنت؟" قال الحيوان "أنا تمساح وهذا موطني، وأنا جوعان" كانت أم جوباري قد علمته ألا يقترب من
الحيوانات ذات الأسنان الضخمة. وكان هذا خطيرًا جدًا.



Activities

1 Read and write T (True) or F (False).

- The first animal Jubari met was a dugong.
- The sea water was fresh.
- The mangrove forest is too salty for Jubari.
- Jubari can run fast in Ras Hankorab beach.
- The Gebel Elba is very steep for Jubari's legs.
- Lake Nasser is a natural lake.
- The crocodile looked like a dead tree in the water.

T
F
T
F
T
F
T
F

2 Read and complete the sentences.

- The sea water was very for Jubari.
- The lives in the mangrove forest.
- The turtle lays her eggs in the
- Jubari's were going into soft sand.
- lives in Gebel Elba.
- Gebel Elba is very for gazelles.
- The crocodile is a animal.
- The lives in Lake Nasser.

3 Answer the following questions.

- Where does the dugong live?
.....
- What lives on the beach?
.....
- Why did Jubari's legs become tired?
.....
- Where does the Nubian ibex live?
.....
- What does the crocodile look like?
.....

The End



He ran and ran all the way home to the Wadi el Gemal.

ثم جرى وجرى طوال الطريق لموطنه في وادي الجمال.

He looked for Subira. "Mom! Mom!" he cried. "Jubari, my brave and curious son. You are home," his mother said. Smiling, she asked, "Did you find the 'Wadi of the Gazelles'?" "No, I didn't. But I found a lot of other places."



"Did you like them?" his mother asked.

"Not all of them. The mangroves were too salty. The beach was too sandy. The mountains were too steep. And there weren't many acacia trees.

وبدا يبحث عن سوبرا وهو يصرخ ويقول: "أمي، أمي" قالت أمه وهي تبسم: "جوباري ولدي الشجاع والفضولي. أنت الآن في موطنك. وسألته وهي تبسم: "هل وجدت وادي الغزلان؟ قال جوباري: "لا، لم أجده. " لكنني وجدت الكثير من الأماكن الأخرى" سألته أمه: "هل أحببت هذه الأماكن؟" قال جوباري: "ليس جميع الأماكن، فأشجار المنجروف كانت مالحة جدًا. والشاطئ كان مليئًا بالرمال. وكانت الجبال شديدة الانحدار. ولم يكن هناك الكثير من أشجار السنط."



"Well, we have a lot of acacia trees here, and the desert is perfect for us to run and run!"

"Yes," said Jubari. "You were **right**. Wadi el Gemal is the perfect place for gazelles."

"I'm so happy that you agree," she smiled.

قالت الأم: "حسنًا، لدينا الكثير من أشجار السنط هنا، والصحراء مكان ملائم (جيد) لنا لكي نجري ونجري!" قال جوباري: "نقد كنت على حق، وادي الجمال مكان مثالي للغزلان" قالت الأم بابتسامة: "أنا سعيدة جدًا أنك توافقني الرأي."



Activities

1 Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. Jubari looked for Donga.
2. Jubari was brave and curious.
3. Jubari found Wadi el Gemal.
4. The mangroves were too sweet.
5. The beach was too sandy.
6. There were a lot of acacia trees in the desert.

☐
☐
☐
☐
☐
☐

2 Read and complete the sentences.

1. Jubari was and curious.
2. The mountains were too
3. The desert was a place for gazelles.
4. The was too sandy.
5. There were many trees in the desert.

3 Answer the following questions.

1. What is the moral of the story?
.....
2. Which ecosystem is very salty to Jubari?
.....
3. What did Jubari look for at the end of the story?
.....
4. Which ecosystem is too sandy for Jubari?
.....
5. Did Jubari find Wadi of the Gazelles?
.....



General Activities

1 Read and write T (True) or F (False).

Jubari was born in Wadi el Gemal.

Jubari wanted to find the Wadi of the Camels.

The first animal he met was a dugong.

He met a turtle, who was swimming in the sea.

He climbed down into a deep canyon.

When he met a dangerous crocodile, he ran home.

2 Choose the correct answer.

What did Subira teach Jubari to do if he met a dangerous animal?

a) Shout for help.

b) Run away.

Which animal offered Jubari some seagrass?

a) A Nubian ibex.

b) A dugong.

Why couldn't Jubari eat the seagrass?

a) It was too salty.

b) It was too wet.

Why did the turtle ask Jubari not to walk on the sand?

a) His hooves were too big.

b) Her eggs were in the sand.

Why was Ras Hankorab beach not a good place for gazelles?

a) The sand was too soft to walk on. b) The beach was too hot.

3 Read and write Yes or No.

1. Daffodils give gazelles food and water all year around.
2. Acacia trees need gazelles because they take their seeds to new places.
3. Dugongs eat leaves from mangrove trees.
4. Turtles lay their eggs in the sand.
5. Dorcas gazelles find it easy to climb to the top of very steep mountains.
6. Lake Nasser is a very big natural lake.
7. A crocodile can look like a dead tree in the water.
8. Gazelles and acacia trees are part of the ecosystem in Wadi el Gemal.

4 Read and circle.

- Jubari and Subira live in
a) Wadi el Gemal b) the Wadi of the Gazelles
- When Jubari was young, Subira taught him which to eat.
a) animals b) plants
- Subira showed Jubari where to rest on days.
a) hot b) windy
- Subira taught him which were dangerous.
a) animals b) places

Listening Texts

Unit (1)

Lesson (1)

Listen and choose the correct answer.

Labq is a very big National Park in South ai. Along the coast here, there are 4.8 meters of mangrove forest, which is the est in the Red Sea. We went there to n why mangrove forests are so ortant for the marine ecosystem. When arrived at the beach, we saw trees wing out of the sea! Most trees can't grow alt water, but mangrove trees can.

Lesson (3)

Listen and choose the correct answer.

Malak wanted to learn more about the azon rainforest, because a lot of people cutting down the trees. The Amazon forest is a very important ecosystem. he living things in the rainforest need h other. Custard apple trees help many nals survive. The animals take the trees ds to other parts of the forest.

Lesson (4)

Listen and choose the correct answer.

A kingfisher was visiting her old friend, lizard in a mangrove tree. She flew down l sat next to the lizard. The lizard looked l. People came and cut down some es. The trees protected the worms and

the fish we eat, but now it's difficult for the kingfisher and the lizard to find food.

Lesson (5)

1- Listen and choose the correct answer.

Eat healthy food like fruit, vegetables and fish .Play sports with your friends. Exercise regularly in the gym or outside. Keep moving. Walk, run, swim, or ride your bike. Take some time to relax and be quiet.

Lesson (7)

1- Listen and choose the correct answer.

Waiting for the rain

It was another long, hot day in the grassland. Cub was with his mother, and he lay in the sunshine. But his mother looked worried.

Activities On Unit (1)

1- Listen and choose the correct answer.

Your heart beats more over 100,000 times a day! So it's important to keep your heart healthy. When you walk, run, swim, or cycle, you make your heart work harder. If you exercise regularly, your heart works better and you can get the minerals, nutrients, and oxygen you need more easily.

Unit (2)

Lesson (1)

1- Listen and choose the correct answer.

Victoria Falls

This enormous waterfall is on the Zambezi River, on the border between Zambia and Zimbabwe. It's 1,708 meters wide and 108 meters high. Every minute, over 5 million cubic meters of water falls into a big canyon which the water has eroded. When the water falls, it makes a lot of noise!

Lesson (4)

1- Listen and choose the correct answer.

Kamal has been to many places with his parents. They saw heavy snow in the mountains, flood in Sudan and amazing dust storms in the desert. He has learned a lot about extreme weather.

Activities On Unit (2)

1- Listen and choose the correct answer.

Moun Kilimanjaro is made of three volcanoes, but they haven't erupted for thousands of years. It is the tallest mountain in Africa. It has lots of different ecosystems and at the top there is snow and ice.

Activities On Review (1)

1- Listen and choose the correct answer.

The Victoria Falls is an enormous waterfall on the Zambezi River. Every minute, 5 million cubic meters of water falls into a big canyon which the water has eroded. The water makes a lot of noise as it falls!

Unit (3)

Lesson (1)

1- Listen and choose the correct answer.

It's summer and Salma and her family are going to Marsa Alam for a holiday. Salma looks out of the car window and sees a sign to the Sukari gold mine. Mine is a place where we get raw materials from the ground, like gold and coal.

Lesson (3)

1- Listen and choose the correct answer.

Egyptians used honey to make medicine. It was very important for helping with problems with the skin or eyes. There are hieroglyphics in ancient temples which show people keeping bees.

Lesson (4)

1- Listen and choose the correct answer.

Mona and Heba are in the living room. They play a game. Mona's mom got something from the kitchen. Heba asks Mona to close her eyes. Mona picks up a soft banana and says it's not hard, I can bend it and it has an odor. It's a banana.

Lesson (7)

1- Listen and choose the correct answer.

Today we're going to do a science experiment. You can work in groups of three. There is a solid object in one box, and a container of liquid in another box. You have to study them and answer some questions.

Listening Texts

Activities On Unit (3)

- 1- Listen and choose the correct answer.

People in ancient Egypt used mud to build houses and other buildings. They took it from the Nile when it was soft and made it into square bricks. These were hard and strong when they dried.

Unit (4)

Lesson (1)

- 1- Listen and choose the correct answer.

I usually get the bus to school, but Dad took me to school today. I opened the car door and got in. It didn't take long to get to school. I thanked my dad, and closed the car door. I was early, so I had some time to talk to my friends.

Lesson (4)

- 1- Listen and choose the correct answer.

Grandpa showed the children a pair of shoes. "They don't look like normal shoes," said Hady. "You're right," Grandpa replied. "Let's go outside. I'll show you what the shoes can do." Hoda and Hady followed Grandpa out of the house to a hill. They were very excited. They sat down and Grandpa took three pairs of shoes from a bag.

Lesson (5)

- 1- Listen and choose the correct answer.

Sherif wanted to be an engineer when he was 10 years old. He always watched TV programs about robots, and he loved making things. When he was 13, he started helping a robot design company online.

Lesson (7)

- 1- Listen and choose the correct answer.

Ali is 10 years old. He lives in the 9th century. One day, He saw an inventor called Abbas Ibn Firnas. He was trying to fly like birds. He used wings made of wood and feathers. He flew from a top of a tower. But he couldn't land correctly. He hurt himself. He was the first man to fly.

Activities On Unit (4)

- 1- Listen and choose the correct answer.

I usually get the bus to school, but Dad took me to school today. I opened the car door and got in. Dad started the car and when we passed the park, the car was travelling at 40 kilometres an hour. I like it when Dad takes me to school.

Activities (1) On Review (2)

- 1- Listen and choose the correct answer.

An oasis is a place in the desert which has lots of natural resources. If water didn't come from under the ground, the plants wouldn't grow. If you visited an oasis, you would see beautiful trees and flowers in the middle of the desert. People have lived in these oases for hundreds of years. Agriculture is very important and people can grow lots of different fruits and vegetables.

Activities (2) On Review (2)

- 1- Listen and choose the correct answer.

Copper was another very important metal. It was easy to bend, and people used it to make tools, cooking pots, and knives, as well as jewelry. We can see a lot of these objects today in Egyptian museums.

Model Answers

Let's remember

1) Read and complete the text with words from the box.

- | | |
|-------------|-----------------|
| 1) homework | 2) Presentation |
| 3) blogs | 4) vlogs |

2) Choose the correct answer.

- | | | | |
|------------|-------------|-----------------|--------|
| 1) had | 2) made | 3) vlogs | 4) man |
| 5) largest | 6) Reptiles | 7) invertebrate | |
| 8) deaf | 9) primary | | |

3) Order the words to make correct sentences.

- Cairo is the largest city in Egypt.
- Airplanes will use solar energy in the future.
- We're talking about recycling today.
- We often eat our meals with bread.
- What are you doing at the moment?

5) Punctuate the following.

- The store sells clothes jewelry and bags.
- Do Fares and Yasmine live in Luxor?
- Will you stay in Amman when you visit Jordan?

Unit (1)

Lesson (1)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

- | | | | |
|----------|-------------|-----------|---------|
| 1) Sinai | 2) mangrove | 3) marine | 4) salt |
|----------|-------------|-----------|---------|

2) Read and complete the text with words from the box.

- | | | | |
|---------|----------|-----------|---------|
| 1) trip | 2) Sinai | 3) marine | 4) fish |
|---------|----------|-----------|---------|

3) Choose the correct answer.

- | | | | |
|---------------|--------------------|-----------|------------|
| 1) largest | 2) important | 3) thick | 4) survive |
| 5) honey | 6) interact | 7) living | 8) salt |
| 9) protect | 10) carbon dioxide | | |
| 11) illnesses | 12) interact | | |

4) Order the words to make correct sentences.

- Mangrove trees help young fish survive.
- An ecosystem is all the animals and plants in an area.
- Mangrove leaves are very thick.

5) Read the text and answer the questions.

A) Choose the correct answer.

- | | | |
|--------------|------------|----------|
| 1) ecosystem | 2) animals | 3) small |
|--------------|------------|----------|

B) Answer the following questions.

- It's all the animals and plants in an area.
- To survive.

6) Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

(The mangrove forests)

The mangrove forest is very important for the marine ecosystem. It is the largest forest in the Red Sea. The mangrove trees can grow in salt water. Their roots are deep to stop the sand washing away when there are storms. Their leaves are very thick. These special leaves stop the plants losing water when it's very hot.

Lesson (2)

1) Choose the correct answer.

- | | | | |
|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|
| 1) who | 2) where | 3) which | 4) who |
| 5) which | 6) who | 7) who | 8) where |
| 9) which | 10) who | 11) where | 12) which |
| 13) who | 14) where | 15) who | 16) which |
| 17) where | 18) who | 19) where | 20) who |

2) Read and complete with the correct form.

- | | | | |
|----------|----------|----------|----------|
| 1) who | 2) who | 3) which | 4) who |
| 5) which | 6) where | 7) who | 8) which |

Lesson (3)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

- | | | | |
|--------------|-----------|------------|----------|
| 1) ecosystem | 2) living | 3) survive | 4) seeds |
|--------------|-----------|------------|----------|

2) Read and complete the text with words from the box.

- | | |
|--------------|------------------|
| 1) do | 2) photographer |
| 3) ecosystem | 4) Custard apple |

3) Choose the correct answer.

- | | | |
|-------------|--------------|-----------|
| 1) patient | 2) down | 3) beauty |
| 4) patience | 5) success | 6) lucky |
| 8) patience | 9) ecosystem | 10) seeds |

4) Order the words to make correct sentences.

- People cut down trees in the rainforest.
- The Amazon rainforest is a very important ecosystem.
- Luck is also quiet important.
- Your exhibition is a great success.
- You need to have a lot of patience.

5) Read the text and answer the questions.

A) Choose the correct answer.

- | | | |
|-----------------|----------|---------------|
| 1) photographer | 2) Malak | 3) rainforest |
|-----------------|----------|---------------|

B) Answer the following questions.

- Because a lot of people are cutting down the trees.
- She wanted to show people how all the parts of the forest ecosystem interact.

6) Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

(The Amazon rainforest)

The Amazon rainforest is a very important ecosystem. All the living things in the rainforest need each other. Custard apple trees help many animals survive. The animals take the trees seeds to other parts of the forest. All the parts of the forest ecosystem interact.

Lesson (4)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

- | | | | |
|---------------|--------|-------------|-----------|
| 1) kingfisher | 2) sad | 3) cut down | 4) lizard |
|---------------|--------|-------------|-----------|

2) Choose the correct answer.

- | | | |
|--------------|-------------|------------|
| 1) protect | 2) food | 3) Worried |
| 4) Surprised | 5) cut down | 6) worried |
| | | 7) bees |

Model Answers

3) Read the text and answer the questions.

A) Choose the correct answer.

- 1) sad 2) hear 3) lizard

B) Answer the following questions.

- 4) In a mangrove tree.
- 5) Because people cut down trees.
- 4) Order the words to make correct sentences.
- 1) The dugong says that the people are back.
- 2) How will you help the trees grow?
- 3) People came and cut down some trees.
- 4) Mangrove trees are part of the ecosystem.

Lesson (5)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

- 1) fish 2) sports 3) bike 4) relax

2) Read and complete the text with words from the box.

- 1) beats 2) heart 3) exercise 4) oxygen

3) Choose the correct answer.

- 1) veins and arteries 2) Arteries
3) Veins 4) oxygen and nutrients 5) sunlight

4) Read the text and answer the questions.

A) Choose the correct answer.

- 1) blood 2) sunlight 3) ill

B) Answer the following questions.

- 4) Our circulatory system.
- 5) Through arteries and veins.
- 5) Order the words to make correct sentences.

- 1) I play sports with my friends.
- 2) How often does your heart beat?

6) Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

(How to keep your heart healthy)

It is important to keep your heart healthy. To keep your heart healthy, eat healthy food like, fruit, vegetables, and fish. You should play sports with your friends. You must keep moving. Walk, run, swim, or ride your bike. Take some time to relax and be quiet.

Lesson (6)

1) Read and complete the text with words from the box.

- 1) sports center 2) volleyball
3) Fridays 4) and

2) Choose the correct answer.

- 1) because 2) so 3) and 4) but
5) and 6) but 7) and 8) because
9) so 10) and 11) because
12) but 13) because

3) Read and complete with the correct form.

- 1) but 2) because 3) but
4) and 5) so

4) Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

(How to keep healthy)

You should play sports with your friend if you want to be healthy. You should exercise regularly. Healthy food is also important. You should have healthy food like fruit, vegetables and fish. You can play tennis or football.

The football club is popular so there are always a lot of people.

Lesson (7)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

- 1) hot 2) Cub 3) sunshine 4) worried

2) Choose the correct answer.

- 1) grow 2) rain 3) hungry 4) falling
5) will 6) won't 7) will 8) can't
9) Can

3) Read the text and answer the questions.

A) Choose the correct answer.

- 1) grassland 2) Mother 3) club

B) Answer the following questions.

- 4) She felt worried.
- 5) The grass won't grow.
- 4) Order the words to make correct sentences.

- 1) We will be very hungry.
- 2) They must wait for rain.
- 3) Can we catch a rabbit to eat?

5) Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

(Grassland ecosystem)

The grassland is an important ecosystem. It is hot. Some animals live in grassland. When it rains, the grass grow. The animals will find their food. If it doesn't rain, the grass won't grow. It's difficult for animals to find their food. All living things need each other to survive.

Activity on unit (1)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

- 1) beats 2) healthy 3) heart 4) exercise

2) Read and complete the text with words from the box.

- 1) blood 2) Arteries
3) oxygen 4) carbon dioxide

3) Read the text and answer the questions.

A) Choose the correct answer.

- 1) survive 2) mangrove trees 3) insects

B) Answer the following questions.

- 4) Hundreds of different kinds of fish, birds, insects and other animals.
- 5) Bees make a special honey from the mangrove flowers.
- 4) The Reader.

A) Read and write T (True) or F (False).

- 1) T 2) F 3) T 4) F

B) Complete the following sentences.

- 1) hot 2) daffodil

5) Choose the correct answer.

- 1) so 2) who 3) where
4) which 5) but 6) because

6) Order the words to make correct sentences.

- 1) What lives in mangrove forests?
- 2) Wael likes fish, but he doesn't like lamb.
- 3) Seleem eats healthy food like fruit.

- 7) Write a text of **FIFTY (50)** words about:
(Ecosystems)

There are different kinds of ecosystems. There are rainforest ecosystem, marine ecosystem, grassland ecosystem, freshwater ecosystem and forest ecosystem. In an ecosystem, living things such as plants and animals interact with non-living things such as water, rocks and soil. They need each other to survive.

Unit (2)

Lesson (1)

- 1) Listen and choose the correct answer.
1) Zambezi 2) 1,708 3) high 4) noise
- 2) Read and complete the text with words from the box.
1) largest 2) countries 3) dunes 4) dry
- 3) Read the text and answer the questions.
A) Choose the correct answer.
1) volcanoes 2) Africa 3) thousand
B) Answer the following questions.
4) Mount Kilimanjaro
5) At the top of the mountain.
4) Order the words to make correct sentences.
1) How tall is Mount Kilimanjaro?
2) The Sahara Desert is the hottest desert in the world.
3) The African continent is an amazing place.
5) Choose the correct answer.
1) crater 2) dunes 3) canyon
4) Erupt 5) valley
6) Write a text of **FIFTY (50)** words about:
(The African Continent)

The African continent is an amazing place, with mountains, deserts, lakes, valleys, and rainforests. There are beautiful coasts, waterfalls, and volcanoes. It has some of the most famous natural wonders in the world. Mount Kilimanjaro is one of them. It's the tallest mountain in Africa. The Sahara Desert is the largest hot desert in the world.

Lesson (2)

The past simple

- 1) Choose the correct answer.
1) went 2) play 3) visited
4) did 5) didn't
- 2) Order the words to make correct sentences.
1) I made a cup of tea.
2) What did you eat yesterday?
3) Did you travel on a ship yesterday?
4) We did our homework an hour ago.
5) They didn't eat ful medames.
3) Read and complete with the correct form.
1) traveled 2) went 3) met
4) studied 5) traveled

The present perfect

- 1) Choose the correct answer.
1) has traveled 2) has told
3) has made 4) have never sailed 5) met
- 2) Order the words to make correct sentences.
1) Have you ever traveled to Luxor?
2) She has visited a traditional market.
3) Sara has never traveled to Aswan.
4) Have they ever visited another country?
5) He has never eaten saydeya.
3) Read and complete with the correct form.
1) seen 2) never 3) told
4) Has 5) ever

Activities

- 1) Read and complete the text with words from the box.
1) holiday 2) visited 3) travel 4) went
- 2) Choose the correct answer.
1) has eaten 2) haven't visited
3) Has 4) have told
5) traveled 6) Have you eaten
7) have 8) ever
9) have never 10) made

Lesson (3)

- 1) Read and complete the text with words from the box.
1) man-made 2) Egypt 3) Kings 4) history
- 2) Read the text and answer the questions.
A) Choose the correct answer.
1) centuries 2) South Africa 3) two
B) Answer the following questions.
4) The ruins of Great Zimbabwe.
5) South Africa and Namibia.
3) Choose the correct answer.
1) continent 2) wonders 3) Archaeologists
4) ruins 5) columns 6) adventure
7) temples 8) natural 9) caves
10) language 11) Walk
4) Order the words to make correct sentences.
1) The Sahara Desert wasn't dry in the past.
2) Visitors can see birds and monkeys in Rwanda.
3) There are 54 countries in Africa.
4) The natural world is beautiful in Africa.

Lesson (4)

- 1) Listen and choose the correct answer.
1) parents 2) snow 3) desert 4) weather
- 2) Read and complete the text with words from the box.
1) storm-chasers 2) hurricane
3) extreme 4) study
3) Choose the correct answer.
1) storm-chaser 2) thunderstorm
3) hurricane 4) flood
5) took 6) dust storm
7) won 8) weather

Model Answers

4) Order the words to make correct sentences.

- 1) Has he taken hundreds of photos?
- 2) Heavy snow fell on the mountain.
- 3) Storm-chasers are interested in thunderstorms.
- 4) They took some photos of the hurricane.

5) Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

(The storm-chaser)

The storm-chaser is the person who travel to places where a hurricane or another form of extreme weather event to study it. He is a good photographer. He takes photos of floods, thunderstorms and dust storms. It's a very interesting job.

Lesson (5)

1) Read and complete the text with words from the box.

- 1) island 2) lava 3) volcanoes 4) villages

2) Choose the correct answer.

- 1) lava 2) erupt 3) mud flow
- 4) soil 5) ash 6) island

3) Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

(The island of Java)

The island of Java is very pretty island, where almost everything is made of lava. It comes from Java's volcanoes, which look down on the villages below. When they erupt, there's ash and fire. Smoke fills the air. The lava and ash mix with mud flows. This makes soil where good food grows.

Lesson (6)

1) Read and complete the text with words from the box.

- 1) arches 2) lake
- 3) sandstone 4) eroded

2) Choose the correct answer.

- 1) Bridge 2) eroded 3) ride 4) sun
- 5) formation 6) sandstone 7) summer 8) rocks

3) Read the text and answer the questions.

A) Choose the correct answer.

- 1) geological 2) limestone 3) 120

B) Answer the following questions.

- 4) The Pinnacles.
- 5) Early in the morning or late afternoon.

4) Order the words to make correct sentences.

- 1) Rainbow Bridge is 200 million years old.
- 2) A river eroded a hole in the sand stone.
- 3) The monument is in a very hot desert.
- 4) Don't forget to take your water bottle.

Lesson (7)

1) Read and complete the text with words from the box.

- 1) tickets 2) balloon 3) excited 4) statues

2) Choose the correct answer.

- 1) ribbon 2) light 3) gentle 4) baskets
- 5) Flame 6) pilot

3) Order the words to make correct sentences.

- 1) Mariam loved watching birds.

- 2) The book is about hot air balloon flights.

- 3) Would you like to have a ride?

4) Read the text and answer the questions.

A) Choose the correct answer.

- 1) birds 2) Luxor 3) excited

B) Answer the following questions.

- 4) It was a diary. 5) Mariam's dad

5) Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

(A trip on a hot air balloon)

I went on a trip to Luxor. I had tickets for the Luxor hot air balloon festival. I found the diary of the pilot. He lit the flame. The weather was perfect, with no rain and a gentle wind. We flew over the statues and temples.

Activity on unit (2)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

- 1) three 2) years 3) Africa 4) snow

2) Read and complete the text with words from the box.

- 1) grandparents 2) storm-chasers
- 3) hurricane 4) weather

3) Read the text and answer the questions.

A) Choose the correct answer.

- 1) Bridge 2) 1910 3) spring

B) Answer the following questions.

- 4) It is 88 meters tall.
- 5) You have to take a boat, ride a horse, or walk to it.

4) The Reader.

A) Read and write T (True) or F (False).

- 1) T 2) T 3) F 4) F

B) Complete the following sentences.

- 3) salty 4) white

5) Choose the correct answer.

- 1) never 2) did 3) ever
- 4) visited 5) been 6) ate

6) Order the words to make correct sentences.

- 1) Have Kamal's parents been to Sudan?
- 2) We have got tickets for the festival.
- 3) The Sahara Desert covers eleven countries.

7) Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

(A man-made wonder)

There are many man-made wonders in Egypt. The Sphinx is one of them. The Ancient Egyptian built it at Giza. It has the head of a man and a body of a lion. It is fantastic. Tourists from all over the world come and watch it. There are others in Africa and Egypt.

Activities on Review (1)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

- 1) River 2) five 3) eroded 4) water

2) Read and complete the text with words from the box.

- 1) man-made 2) Archaeologists
- 3) natural 4) volcano

3) Read the text and answer the questions.

A) Choose the correct answer.

- 1) rainforest 2) calm 3) scare

B) Answer the following questions.

4) Monkeys, snakes, birds, and gorillas.

5) You must be very quiet.

4) The Reader.

A) Read and write T (True) or F (False).

- 1) T 2) F 3) T 4) F

B) Complete the following sentences.

3) salty 4) sandy

5) Choose the correct answer.

- 1) saw 2) been 3) because

4) who 5) and 6) where

6) Order the words to make correct sentences.

1) The beautiful natural world is in Africa.

2) The Amazon rainforest is an important ecosystem.

3) There are many volcanoes on Java Island.

7) Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

(Healthy Habits)

I get up at six o'clock. I have healthy breakfast to be healthy. I walk every day and I play sports with my friends. I like healthy food like fruit and vegetables. I go to bed early because I don't want to be tired in the morning.

Unit (3)

Lesson (1)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

1) Marsa Alam 2) car

3) gold 4) raw

2) Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

1) Marsa Alam 2) What 3) mine 4) Can

3) Choose the correct answer.

1) state 2) boil 3) liquid 4) freeze

5) gas 6) solid 7) solid 8) fixed

9) solid 10) raw 11) wood 12) fossil

13) Gases

4) Read and complete the text with words from the box.

1) boiled 2) steam 3) froze 4) ice

5) Order the words to make correct sentences.

1) A solid has a fixed shape.

2) The sun gives us solar energy.

3) When you boil water, it turns to steam.

6) Read the text and answer the questions.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1) natural resources 2) Gold 3) natural

B) Answer the following questions.

4) The sun

5) Because when we burn fossil fuels, we can't use them again.

7) Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

(Natural Resources)

There are two kind of resources. They are renewable and non-renewable. Renewable energy like sun and wind.

They are clean and never run out. Solar energy is renewable energy. Non-renewable energy isn't clean. When we burn fossil fuels, we can't use them again.

Lesson (2)

Conditional (If)

1) Choose the correct answer.

1) would 2) snowed 3) saw

4) will 5) found 6) would

7) met 8) will 9) has 10) would

2) Read and complete with the correct form.

1) will 2) didn't 3) takes

4) would 5) catch 6) won't 7) had

Activities

1) Read and complete the text with words from the box.

1) mountains 2) bones 3) digging 4) shovel

2) Choose the correct answer.

1) bones 2) digging 3) in

4) skeletons 5) shovel 6) will

7) had 8) would 9) stay

3) Read the text and answer the questions.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1) last week 2) 8 3) classmates

B) Answer the following questions.

4) We saw really big dinosaur skeletons.

5) It is fantastic.

4) Order the words to make correct sentences.

1) They are going to the mountains.

2) What would you do if you had a bike?

3) I found some dinosaur bones.

5) Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

(A trip to the Egyptian Geological Museum)

I went to the Egyptian Geological Museum. I went with my friends. We went by school bus. We saw really big dinosaur skeletons. The museum is fantastic. The guide told us interesting information about dinosaurs. We came back home at eight o'clock.

Lesson (3)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

1) Egyptians 2) important 3) eyes 4) bees

2) Choose the correct answer.

1) at 2) successful 3) economy 4) fertile

5) flax 6) fresh 7) bend 8) hives

9) medicine 10) mud

3) Read the text and answer the questions.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1) honey 2) hives 3) cheap

B) Answer the following questions.

4) They put honey on the cut.

5) So that the bees could find new flowers.

4) Order the words to make correct sentences.

1) The Nile flooded and made the soil fertile.

2) People used flax to make linen.

Model Answers

- 3) Ancient Egypt was very successful.
5) Write a text of **FIFTY (50) words** about:
(Honey)

People kept bees to make honey in ancient Egypt. They used honey to make food taste sweet. They used it as a medicine, too. If you cut yourself, you could put honey on the cut. Bees lived in houses made of clay. The bee houses are called hives. People moved the hives, so the bees could find new flowers.

Lesson (4)

- 1) Listen and choose the correct answer.
1) living room 2) moon 3) her eyes 4) banana
2) Choose the correct answer.
1) Blind 2) odor 3) sticky 4) mass
5) gas 6) liquid 7) Steam
8) comfortable 9) sticky 10) hard
3) Read the text and answer the questions.
A) Choose the correct answer.
1) blind 2) happy 3) comfortable
B) Answer the following questions.
4) Because her cousin has just arrived from Alex.
5) It is rough, and it has an odor.
4) Order the words to make correct sentences.
1) The glue is sticky.
2) Welcome to my house.
3) What are the chairs like?
5) Write a text of **FIFTY (50) words** about:
(A description of a strawberry)

Strawberry is a delicious fruit. It has a red color. It is a solid. It has a soft touch. You can feel the texture of the strawberry. It's soft but you can't bend it. It's a healthy fruit.

Lesson (5)

- 1) Read and complete the text with words from the box.
1) do 2) experiment 3) pour 4) mix
2) Choose the correct answer.
1) do 2) container 3) detergent 4) sticky
5) layer 6) syringe 7) liquid 8) sink
9) floats 10) syrup
3) Read the text and answer the questions.
A) Choose the correct answer.
1) on foot 2) 5 3) sink
B) Answer the following questions.
4) A science experiment.
5) Because it is interesting.
4) Order the words to make correct sentences.
1) Honey is thick and sticky.
2) The heavier liquids sink to the bottom.
3) Milk and water are liquids.
5) Write a text of **FIFTY (50) words** about:
(A science Experiment)

Today we're going to do a science experiment. What happens when we pour different liquids into one

container? They mix together. Liquids have a different mass. The heavier liquids sink to the bottom. The liquids with a lower mass float on top.

Lesson (6)

- 1) Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.
1) went 2) waterfalls 3) flamingo 4) enjoy
2) Choose the correct answer.
1) on 2) oasis 3) bird
4) coastline 5) orchards 6) on
7) busy 8) farming
3) Read the text and answer the questions.
A) Choose the correct answer.
1) Damietta 2) popular 3) vacation
B) Answer the following questions.
4) They are places where fruit trees are grown.
5) Its history.
4) Write a text of **FIFTY (50) words** about:
(A school trip)

I went to a school trip last Friday. I went with my friends. We went to Alexandria Library. We went by school bus. We met the librarian and saw many books. The library is fantastic. It's very enormous. We enjoyed a lot. We learnt more about its history.

Lesson (7)

Reported speech

- 1) Choose the correct answer.
1) liked 2) had 3) could
4) would 5) was 6) can
2) Choose the correct answer.
1) loves 2) can 3) worked
4) liked 5) was 6) wanted
3) Read and complete with the correct form.
1) could 2) played 3) said
4) would 5) went

Activities

- 1) Listen and choose the correct answer.
1) experiment 2) groups
3) solid 4) answer
2) Choose the correct answer.
1) with 2) liquid 3) could
4) went 5) liked 6) was
7) go 8) can 9) need 10) was
3) Read the text and answer the questions.
A) Choose the correct answer.
1) subject 2) Science 3) school
B) Answer the following questions.
4) He went on a school trip to the Science Museum.
5) About the environment.
4) Order the words to make correct sentences.
1) Do you need to borrow a calculator?
2) I like visiting the park.
3) Let's do a science experiment.

- 4) Mom said it was cold and rainy.
 5) Write a text of **FIFTY (50)** words about:
 (A visit to the museum)

I went to a visit to the museum. I went with my family. We went in our father's car. We saw many old things that were precious. We enjoyed our trip a lot because it was amazing. We went back home tired but we were happy.

Activity on unit (3)

- Listen and choose the correct answer.
 1) mud 2) Nile 3) bricks 4) strong
- Read and complete the text with words from the box.
 1) Alexandria 2) train 3) visited 4) enjoy
- Read the text and answer the questions.
 A) Choose the correct answer.
 1) city 2) early 3) one
 B) Answer the following questions.
 4) The traffic is always busy on her way to school.
 5) Big and very exciting.
- The Reader.
 A) Read and write T (True) or F (False).
 1) T 2) T 3) F 4) F
 B) Complete the following sentences.
 3) Lake 4) teeth
- Choose the correct answer.
 1) ate 2) will 3) had
 4) would 5) could 6) goes
- Order the words to make correct sentences.
 1) Coal and gas are non-renewable resources.
 2) People make linen from flax.
 3) Who liked honey in ancient Egypt?
- Write a text of **FIFTY (50)** words about:
 (Papyrus)

Ancient Egypt was very successful because it had good natural resources. They had papyrus. They used this strong plant to make things such as basket and sandals, but the most important thing they made from it was paper. The ancient Egyptians made some of first books in the world using it.

Unit (4)

Lesson (1)

- Listen and choose the correct answer.
 1) bus 2) Dad 3) thanked 4) friends
- Choose the correct answer.
 1) bike 2) cycle 3) science 4) pedals
 5) brakes 6) speed 7) up 8) brakes
 9) pull 10) cycling
- Read the text and answer the questions.
 A) Choose the correct answer.
 1) bus 2) arrive 3) Dad
 B) Answer the following questions.
 4) At 40 kilometers an hour.

- 5) I talked to my friends.
 4) Write a text of **FIFTY (50)** words about:
 (Your new bike)

My birthday is today. My parents bought me a new bike as a present. They teach me how to ride the bike. I learned how to move it. I push the pedals to move the bike. To make the bike stop, I use the brakes. If I want to increase the speed, I push the pedals more quickly.

Lesson (2)

Question tag

- Choose the correct answer.
 1) is 2) did 3) will
 4) can't 5) won't
- Read and complete with the correct form.
 1) won't 2) live 3) can't 4) went

Activities

- Read and complete the text with the words in the box.
 1) what 2) scientist 3) gravity 4) didn't
- Read and complete the sentences with the words in the box.
 1) friction 2) pull 3) slowly
 4) smaller 5) space
- Choose the correct answer.
 1) Friction 2) tension 3) Air resistance
 4) Spring force 5) Gravity 6) didn't they
 7) can't they 8) will he 9) is it
 10) they
- Order the words to make correct sentences.
 1) It won't rain tomorrow, will it?
 2) Your mom doesn't speak French, does she?
 3) She didn't have chicken, did she?
- Complete the question tags.
 1) does 2) won't 3) can't
 4) did 5) don't

Lesson (3)

- Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.
 1) paper 2) vertically 3) over 4) dart
- Read and complete the text with words from the box.
 1) piece 2) top 3) tip 4) down
- Write a text of **FIFTY (50)** words about:
 (A Dart paper airplane)

To make a paper airplane. Fold a piece of paper in half vertically. Open the paper. Fold over the top two corners. Turn the paper over. Fold it in half and crease it. Fold down the two wings. Your dart is ready to fly.

Lesson (4)

- Listen and choose the correct answer.
 1) shoes. 2) normal 3) hill 4) excited
- Read and complete the text with words from the box.
 1) up 2) higher 3) sides 4) feeling
- Order the words to make correct sentences.
 1) Grandpa

Model Answers

- 2) Do you have something to show us?
- 3) The children enjoy flying above the village.
- 4) Leaves fall to the ground in fall.
- 4) Read the text and answer the questions.
- A) Choose the correct answer.
 - 1) pulls
 - 2) shoes
 - 3) special
- B) Answer the following questions.
 - 1) To watch his favorite football team.
 - 5) Gravity.

Lesson (5)

- 1) Listen and choose the correct answer.
 - 1) engineer
 - 2) robots
 - 3) making
 - 4) thirteen
- 2) Choose the correct answer.
 - 1) astronaut
 - 2) float
 - 3) Engineers
 - 4) science
 - 5) pilot
 - 6) Air resistance
- 3) Order the words to make correct sentences.
 - 1) She has good computer skills.
 - 2) An architect designs new buildings.
 - 3) We can travel on an aircraft.
- 4) Read the text and answer the questions.
 - A) Choose the correct answer.
 - 1) pilot
 - 2) health
 - 3) Dalia
 - B) Answer the following questions.
 - 4) She enjoys traveling.
 - 5) She likes working with people and she'd like to work in medicine.
- 5) Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

(Your future job)

I like science very much. I want to be an engineer when I grow up. It is an interesting job. An engineer can design new buildings. He can make bridges. An engineer doesn't make buildings and bridges only. An engineer also helps make things such as skateboards.

Lesson (7)

- 1) Listen and circle the correct answer.
 - 1) 10
 - 2) century
 - 3) wood
 - 4) first
- 2) Choose the correct answer.
 - 1) builder
 - 2) invented
 - 3) land
 - 4) feathers
 - 5) inventor
- 3) Order the words to make correct sentences.
 - 1) Abbas Ibn Firnas was an inventor.
 - 2) He used wings to fly like birds.
 - 3) He invented water clocks.
- 4) Read the text and answer the questions.
 - A) Choose the correct answer.
 - 1) time
 - 2) fly
 - 3) young
 - B) Answer the following questions.
 - He was an important person who invented many things.
 - 5) No, he didn't
- 5) Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

(Abbas Ibn Firnas)

Abbas Ibn Firnas was an inventor in the 9th century. He was trying to fly like birds. He used wings made of wood and feathers. He flew from a top of a tower. But he

couldn't land correctly. He hurt himself. He was the first man to fly.

Activity on unit (4)

- 1) Listen and choose the correct answer.
 - 1) bus
 - 2) door
 - 3) hour
 - 4) Dad
- 2) Read and complete the text with words from the box.
 - 1) programs
 - 2) making
 - 3) company
 - 4) own
- 3) Read the text and answer the questions.
 - A) Choose the correct answer.
 - 1) inventor
 - 2) clocks
 - 3) wood
 - B) Answer the following questions.
 - 4) He jumped from a tower.
 - 5) Because he was probably the first person ever to fly using wings.
- 4) The Reader.
 - A) Read and write T (true) or F (False).
 - 1) T
 - 2) F
 - 3) F
 - 4) T
 - B) Answer the following questions.
 - 1) el Gemal
 - 2) acacia
 - 5) Choose the correct answer.
 - 1) isn't
 - 2) don't
 - 3) won't
 - 4) can
 - 5) have
 - 6) didn't
 - 6) Order the words to make correct sentences.
 - 1) You use a push force to jump.
 - 2) Without speed you will fall over the bike.
 - 3) I am interested in stars and planets.
 - 7) Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

(Gravity)

Gravity is what makes things fall to the ground. It is the force that makes leaves fall to the ground in fall and not float above the tree. When the boy jumps on the bed, gravity brings him down and stops him floating up into the air. It is also the force that keeps the planets moving around the sun.

Activities (1) on Review (2)

- 1) Listen and choose the correct answer.
 - 1) desert
 - 2) hundreds
 - 3) Agriculture
 - 4) vegetables
- 2) Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.
 - 1) engineer
 - 2) job
 - 3) factory
 - 4) luck
- 3) Read the text and answer the questions.
 - A) Choose the correct answer.
 - 1) water
 - 2) 9th
 - 3) hundred
 - B) Answer the following questions.
 - Abbas Ibn Firnas.
 - 5) Al-Maqata.
- 4) The Reader.
 - A) Read and write T (true) or F (False).
 - 1) T
 - 2) T
 - 3) F
 - 4) F
 - B) Complete the following sentences.
 - 1) run away
 - 2) dugong
 - 5) Choose the correct answer.
 - 1) has
 - 2) isn't
 - 3) went

- 4) don't 5) didn't 6) went
- 6) Order the words to make correct sentences.
- 1) Without using the pedals you will fall over the bike.
- 2) A glass window has a rough texture.
- 3) They used honey as a medicine.
- 7) Write a text of **FIFTY (50)** words about:
(A job you'd like to do)

When I grow up, I want to be an architect. This is the job I like. It is interesting. I like drawing and making things so I want to be an architect. The architect can design many houses. He also can design building and houses.

Activities (2) on Review (2)

- 1) Listen and choose the correct answer.
- 1) copper 2) bend
3) tools 4) Egyptian
- 2) Read and complete the text with words from the box.
- 1) Agriculture 2) Egypt
3) fertile 4) crops
- 3) Read the text and answer the questions.
- A) Choose the correct answer.
- 1) visit 2) cold 3) gazelles
- B) Answer the following questions.
- 4) Because the acacia trees give them food and enough water. 5) Acacia seed.
- 4) The Reader.
- A) Read and write T (true) or F (False).
- 1) T 2) T 3) F 4) F
- B) Complete the following sentences.
- 1) Lake 2) ibex
- 5) Choose the correct answer.
- 1) went 2) could 3) don't
4) would grow 5) were 6) isn't
- 6) Order the words to make correct sentences.
- 1) Waleed played football with his friend.
- 2) Gravity stops people flying up into space.
- 3) What would you do if you had a lot of money?
- 7) Write a text of **FIFTY (50)** words about:
(Salt)

Salt was also a very important resource in ancient Egypt, and they sold it to other countries, too. People used salt to keep food fresh. It was also useful in medicine and agriculture. Some of the lakes in the Nile Delta had lots of salt.

The story

Activities (P. 224)

- 1) Read and write True (T) or False (F).
- 1) T 2) T 3) T 4) F
5) T 6) F
- 2) Read and complete the sentences.
- 1) Wadi el Gemal 2) plants 3) hot
4) daffodil- 5) the acacia tree

3) Answer the following questions.

- 1) She taught him which animals were dangerous and how to stay away from predators.
- 2) The Wadi of the Camels.
- 3) Daffodil and acacia.
- 4) The acacia tree leaves give them water.
- 5) They take their seeds to new places.
- 6) To look for the Wadi of the Gazelles.

Activities (P. 229)

1) Read and write True (T) or False (F).

- 1) T 2) F 3) T 4) F
5) T 6) F 7) T

2) Read and complete the sentences.

- 1) salty 2) dugong 3) sand
4) hooves 5) ibex 6) steep
7) dangerous 8) crocodile

3) Answer the following questions.

- 1) In the mangrove forest. 2) The turtle.
3) Because the mountain was very steep.
4) In Gebel Elba. 5) A dead tree.

Activities (P. 232)

1) Read and write True (T) or False (F).

- 1) F 2) T 3) F 4) F
5) T 6) T

2) Read and complete the sentences.

- 1) brave 2) steep 3) perfect
4) beach 5) acacia

3) Answer the following questions.

- 1) To listen to your parent's advice.
- 2) Marine ecosystem. / Mangrove trees.
- 3) He looked for Subira.
- 4) Coastal ecosystem.
- 5) No, he didn't.

General Activities (P. 233)

1) Read and write True (T) or False (F).

- 1) T 2) F 3) T
4) F 5) F 6) T

2) Choose the correct answer.

- 1) Run away - 2) A dugong 3) It was too salty.
4) Her eggs were in the sand.
5) The sand was too soft to walk on.

3) Read and write Yes or No.

- 1) No 2) Yes 3) No 4) Yes
5) No 6) No 7) Yes 8) Yes

4) Read and circle.

- 1) Wadi el Gemal 2) plants
3) hot 4) animals

AL-BAHER

CONNECT

PLUS

Final Revision



Unit (1)

Life in my world

Ecosystems

grassland	المراعى / أرض عُشبية	animals	حيوانات
rainforest	غابة مطيرة	species	أنواع / فصائل
freshwater	ماء عذب	soil	تربة زراعية
living things	كائنات حية	thick	سميك
non-living things	كائنات غير حية	canopy	مظلة
Amazon rainforests	غابات الأمازون المطيرة	community	مجتمع

Animals

dugong	حيوان الأطوم	worm	دودة
kingfisher	طائر الرفراف	cub	شبل
lizard	سحلية	buzzing bees	طنين النحل

The heart

arteries	شرايين	oxygen	أكسجين
veins	أوردة	beat	يدق / ينبض
carbon dioxide	ثاني أكسيد الكربون	blood	دم

Others

salt water	ماء مالح	wadi	وادي
mangrove tree	شجرة المانجروف	illnesses	أمراض
custard apple tree	شجرة تفاح الكاسترد	diseases	أمراض
medicinal plant	نبات طبي	interact	يتفاعل
survive	ينجو / يبقى علي قيد الحياة	pollen	حبوب اللقاح

Adjective

beautiful	جميل	beauty	الجمال
patient	صبور	patience	الصبر
lucky	محظوظ	luck	الحظ
successful	ناجح	success	النجاح

Abstract Noun

Help your child revise unit (1).

ساعد طفلك أن يراجع الوحدة الأولى.

Relative Clauses

who

الذي / التي (للعاقل)

☛ **for people**

e.g. We met a man **who** works in a garden.

which

الذي / التي (لغير العاقل)

☛ **for things**

e.g. A wadi is an ecosystem **which** is normally dry.

where

حيث (للمكان)

☛ **for places**

e.g. We learned a lot about the area **where** they live.

Linking Words

and

✎ We went to the beach **and** we swam in the sea.

but

✎ Hany likes basketball, **but** he doesn't like football.

because

✎ Salma goes to the pool **because** she likes swimming.

so

✎ Lara wants to keep her heart healthy, **so** she does exercise.

General Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- Our veins and arteries carry around bodies.
a) water b) food c) carbon dioxide d) blood
- move blood away from our heart.
a) Arteries b) Veins c) Hearts d) Stomach
- carry blood to the heart.
a) Oxygen b) Veins c) Stomach d) Arteries
- We don't use like plants do.
a) oxygen b) blood c) carbon dioxide d) water

- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- Seleem loves
a) sports b) money c) English d) math
- He eats food.
a) snack b) healthy c) unhealthy d) fast
- He doesn't eat much
a) apples b) bananas c) meat d) chocolate
- In the evening, he wants to
a) sleep b) run c) relax d) study

2 Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

insects - fish - living - area - desert

- Toka : What is an ecosystem, Roqia?
 Roqia : It is all the animals and plants in an 1)
 Toka : Which ecosystems do we have in Egypt?
 Roqia : We have a 2) ecosystem and a marine ecosystem.
 Toka : What are some of the 3) things in a marine ecosystem?
 Roqia : They are 4) and whales.
 Toka : Thanks for your information.
 Roqia : You're welcome.

Final Revision

Read and complete the text with words from the box.

sunlight - protect - food - happy - sad

Humans need sunlight, too. We can't make our own 1) , but we get vitamin (D) from 2) This can help 3) us from getting sick. Sunlight also makes a lot of people feel 4)

3 Read the following text then answer the questions.

Nabq is a very big National Park in South Sinai. We went there to learn why mangrove forests are so important for the marine ecosystem. When we arrived at the beach, we saw trees growing out of the sea! Most trees can't grow in salt water, but mangrove trees can. They have amazing roots which grow high out of the water. These roots help them get oxygen. When I touched the trees leaves, they felt very thick. These special leaves stop the plants losing water when it's very hot. Mangrove trees protect the non-living things and the living things in the marine ecosystem. When there are storms, their deep roots stop the sand washing away.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- The mangrove forests are very important for the ecosystem.
a) desert b) marine c) sand d) grassland
- The mangrove trees grow on water.
a) cold b) hot c) salty d) sweet
- The underlined word "thick" is the opposite of
a) big b) tall c) thin d) large

B) Answer the following questions.

4. What does the underlined word "there" refer to?

5. What is special about the roots and leaves of the mangrove trees?

4

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d. (Vocabulary)

1. The of a mangrove tree are thick.
a) stems b) roots c) leaves d) flowers
2. Fish and animals are things.
a) living b) dead c) non-living d) abstract
3. Stones and rocks are things.
a) living b) non-living c) survive d) thick
4. Many, bees and other insects live in mangrove forests.
a) camels b) bears c) dogs d) butterflies
5. Mangrove forests the marine ecosystem.
a) protect b) kill c) damage d) destroy
6. The plants, animals, and insects with each other to survive.
a) kill b) protect c) fight d) interact
7. Sara doesn't wait because she isn't a person.
a) patience b) patient c) success d) luck
8. There is so much in the Amazon rainforest.
a) beauty b) beautiful c) success d) successful
9. Hany's exhibition was a great
a) success b) successful c) patient d) beautiful
10. is also important.
a) Lucky b) Luck c) Patient d) Successful
11. move blood away from our heart.
a) Veins b) Arteries c) Blood d) Muscles
12. We can get vitamin D from
a) sunlight b) moonlight c) water d) blood
13. It's important to keep your heart
a) healthy b) unhealthy c) weak d) slow
14. We need and oxygen in our blood.
a) nutrients b) carbon c) gas d) air

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d. (Grammar)

1. This is a lizard lives in the Egyptian desert.
a) which b) where c) who d) when
2. This is a medicinal plant helps people with coughs.
a) who b) where c) when d) which
3. This is wadi different animals live.
a) where b) when c) which d) who
4. This is a person lives in Cairo.
a) which b) who c) where d) when
5. This is Ali lives in Giza.
a) who b) which c) where d) when
6. This is a place it sometimes snows.
a) where b) who c) when d) what
7. The Sinai Peninsula is a place red foxes live.
a) who b) when c) what d) where
8. Is Mona the girl always draws pictures of animals?
a) when b) which c) where d) who
9. I don't play basketball, I play football.
a) so b) and c) but d) because
10. I'm going to the sports center it's basketball club today.
a) because b) but c) so d) and
11. It's Friday my brother doesn't go to school.
a) who b) which c) when d) where
12. I love football I love tennis, too.
a) but b) because c) and d) so
13. He wants to be healthy, he plays a lot of sports.
a) but b) because c) and d) so
14. Ali eats a healthy diet, he exercises every day.
a) but b) so c) because d) and

5

Put the words in the correct order to make sentences

1. does - your - How - beat - often - heart - ?
2. says - that - the people - The dugong - back - are - .
3. you - aunt - my - Do - know - lives - who - Alex - in - ?
4. lives - the - What - mangrove - forests - in - ?

6

Write a text of **FIFTY (50)** words about:

How to keep healthy

Guiding elements:

(healthy - fruit - vegetables - exercise - unhealthy - chocolate - relax)

-

Write a text of **FIFTY (50)** words about:

Our heart

Guiding elements:

(beats - keep - exercise - minerals - oxygen)

Unit (2)

Look around you

Vocabulary

valley	وادي	crater	فوهة بركان
canyon	وادي ضيق - منحدر	dunes	كثبان (رملية)
wetlands	أراضي رطبة - مستنقعات	erode	ينحس - يفتت
erupt	يثور	storm-chaser	متتبع العواصف
hurricane	إعصار	thunderstorm	عاصفة رعدية
flood	فيضان	dust storm	عاصفة ترابية
photographer	مصور فوتوغرافي	mountain	جبل
coast	ساحل	grassland	أرض عشبية
excited	مسرور - متحمس	man-made	من صنع الإنسان
archaeologist	عالم آثار	ruins	أطلال
century	قرن (١٠٠ عام)	columns	أعمدة
lava	حمم بركانية	soil	تربة زراعية
mud flow	تدفق الطين	ash	رماد
arch	قوس	diary	يوميات / مفكرة
light - lit	يشعل - أشعل	flame	لهب - شعلة
pilot	طيار	hot air balloon	منطاد هوائي
ribbon	شريط		

Natural Wonders

The Sahara Desert

الصحراء الكبرى

Mount Kilimanjaro

جبل كليمنجارو

Victoria Falls

شلالات فيكتوريا

Ngorongoro Crater

فوهة بركان نجورونجورو

Present Perfect Tense

زمن المضارع التام

Form

Subject + have / has + P.P

e.g. I've played tennis.

e.g. She has eaten pizza.

Negative

Subject + haven't / hasn't + P.P

e.g. We haven't studied French.

e.g. He hasn't slept early.

Question

Yes, No question Have / Has + subject + P.P?

e.g. Have you bought a TV?

e.g. Has he ridden a bike?

Wh-question

Q.W + have / has + subject + P.P?

e.g. Where have you been?

- I've been to Luxor.

Keywords

just I've just met my teacher.

ever Have you ever seen a lion?

never No, I've never seen a lion.

already She's already fed the hens.
She's fed the hens already.

General Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- The continent has the most famous natural wonders in the world.
a) Asian b) European c) Australian d) African
- The Ngorongoro Crater is in
a) Cairo b) London c) Tanzania d) America
- The formed when a volcano erupted millions of years ago.
a) crater b) character c) cubs d) cups
- The crater is about square kilometers.
a) 260 b) 240 c) 620 d) 640

- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- Rainbow is one of the largest arches in the world.
a) Bridge b) River c) Lake d) Sea
- It's also million years old.
a) 20 b) 200 c) 2000 d) 20000
- It's 88 meters
a) long b) wide c) tall d) deep
- It's in a very desert.
a) small b) cool c) cold d) hot

2 Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

big - buffaloes - reading - Tanzania - ants

- Sama : What are you doing now?
Toka : I'm 1) a book about natural wonders.
The Ngorongoro crater is one of them.
- Sama : In which country is it?
Toka : It's in 2)
- Sama : How 3) is it?
Toka : It's about 260 square kilometers.
- Sama : Are there any animals?
Toka : Yes, there are many big animals like elephants,
4), and leopards.

Read and complete the text with words from the box.

eroded - noise - River - canyon - Sea

The Victoria Falls are an enormous waterfall on the Zambezi
 1) Every minute, 5 million cubic meters of water falls into
 a big 2) which the water has 3) The
 water makes a lot of 4) as it falls.

3 Read the following text then answer the questions.

The Pinnacles are one of the most unusual geological formations in Western Australia. They are a group of tall white rocks in the Nambung National Park. The Pinnacles are 25,000 to 30,000 years old. They are made of white limestone. The tallest columns are between three and five meters high. The best time of day to see them is in the early morning or late afternoon. The best time of year to see them is between August and October when the desert is full of beautiful wild flowers! You can drive there from the city of Perth in two hours.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- The Pinnacles are unusual geological formation in Western
 a) Australia b) Africa c) Europe d) America
- The underlined word "August" is a
 a) day b) season c) month d) sport
- The Pinnacles are made of white
 a) wood b) metal c) plastic d) limestone

B) Answer the following questions.

- How old are the Pinnacles?
- How high are the tallest columns?

Final Revision

4 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d. (Vocabulary)

1. The Ngorongoro Crater is the largest crater in the world.
a) canyon b) valley c) volcanic d) dune
2. Inside the Ngorongoro Crater there are forests and
a) deserts b) wetlands c) clubs d) dunes
3. The Sahara Desert covers countries.
a) eight b) nine c) eleven d) six
4. The Sahara Desert is very
a) cold b) warm c) snowy d) hot
5. Water has changed the of Victoria Falls.
a) place b) shape c) color d) crater
6. The is a hill made of sand shaped by the wind.
a) dune b) valley c) canyon d) wetland
7. To is to change or destroy by rain, wind or the sea, etc.
a) erode b) erupt c) snow d) rain
8. The is an area of land that is often covered by water.
a) dune b) valley c) wetland d) canyon
9. When volcanoes, fire and rocks come out of the top.
a) erode b) erupt c) erose d) make
10. is the top part of the Earth in which plants grow.
a) Stem b) Leaf c) Soil d) Ash
11. is hot liquid rock that comes out of volcanoes.
a) Soil b) Ash c) Mud flow d) Lava
12. A is soft wet material that moves down mountains.
a) mud flow b) soil c) ash d) lava
13. A is a long soft piece of material..
a) flame b) ribbon c) basket d) light
14. People use a to carry things.
a) flame b) basket c) ribbon d) light

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d. (Grammar)

1. Waleed has by bus.
a) travel b) traveled c) travels d) traveling
2. Aya has never a famous person.
a) met b) meet c) meets d) meeting
3. Amir and Fares tennis before.
a) hasn't played b) has played c) haven't played d) playing
4. Fares ever traveled by train?
a) Has b) Is c) Have d) Are
5. Have Youssef and Wael an elephant?
a) see b) saw c) seen d) sees
6. Has Mom made fesikh for Sham El-Nessim?
a) ever b) never c) just d) already
7. Have they ever another country?
a) visit b) visited c) visiting d) visits
8. Have you saydeya?
a) eats b) ate c) eaten d) eating
9. Has Kamal to the desert?
a) be b) been c) being d) to be
10. Was Kamal frightened when he his first hurricane?
a) see b) saw c) seen d) sees
11. He the first prize for photographers aged 10.
a) won b) have won c) winning d) win
12. Have you ever seen a volcano? - Yes,
a) I have b) I haven't c) have I d) have you
13. Kamal has a photo of many extreme weather events.
a) took b) taken c) takes d) taking
14. Kamal has in a dangerous situation.
a) been never b) never been c) ever been d) be

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences

1. continent - The - African - place - an amazing - is - .
.....
2. you - Have - traveled - a - ship - on - ?
.....
3. this - story - I - have - told - you - already - .
.....
4. is - special - What - about - the - Java - of - Island - ?
.....

6 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

The Sahara Desert

Guiding elements:

(natural - wonders - largest - eleven countries - sand dunes)

Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

Man-made wonders of Africa

Guiding elements:

(incredible - Egypt - the Pyramids - The Sphinx - visit)

Unit (3)

How we use our world

Natural resources

موارد طبيعية

coal	فحم	date	بلح	economy	الاقتصاد
fertile	خصبة	flax	نبات الكتان	mine	منجم
mud	طين	pale	شاحب اللون	renewable	متجدد
raw materials	مواد خام	linen	قماش الكتان	non-renewable	غير متجدد

States of water

حالات الماء

liquid	سائل	solid	صلب	gas	غاز
boil	يغلي	freeze	يتجمد	melt	يذوب
fixed shape	شكل ثابت				

Physical properties

خصائص فيزيائية

bend	يطوي	hard	جامد - صلب	mass	الكتلة
odor	رائحة	rough	خشن	soft	ناعم
sticky	لزج	texture	نسيج / ملمس		

Stories

قصص

dig	يحفر	flamingo	طائر الفلامنجو	hole	حفرة
sink	يفقس / يغوص	shovel	جاروف	tunnel	نفق
skeleton	هيكل عظمي	expert	خبير	blind	أعمى

First Conditional

Form: If + present simple , will + inf.

Usage: We use the first conditional:

⇒ To describe events which will probably happen in the future.

e.g. If we go to the museum, we will see dinosaur bones.

Second Conditional

Form: If + past simple , would + inf.

Usage: We use the second conditional:

⇒ To describe events we imagine, but probably won't happen.

e.g. If it snowed in October, I would be very surprised.

Reported speech

Direct speech

الكلام المباشر

✍ The words that a person says.

e.g. Seleem said, "I like reading comics."

Reported speech

الكلام الغير المباشر (الكلام المنقول)

✍ To report what a person said.

e.g. Seleem said he liked reading comics.

Notice the changes

لاحظ التغييرات

e.g. Fareeda said, "I can play tennis."

Fareeda said she could play tennis."

- 1 Change the subject according to the speaker.
- 2 Change the verb from present to past.
- 3 We don't use speech marks.

General Activities

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- People kept to make honey in ancient Egypt.
a) birds b) bees c) cars d) chickens
- People used honey to make food taste
a) sour b) sweet c) sugary d) bad
- They used honey as a too.
a) medicine b) plant c) clay d) mud
- They put bees in a house called
a) knives b) hives c) lives d) wives

2 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- People in ancient Egypt use to build houses.
a) mud b) stones c) glass d) sand
- They took mud from the
a) Desert b) Nile c) Lake d) Sea
- People used mud and made it into bricks.
a) circle b) round c) square d) rectangle
- These bricks were and strong when they were dried.
a) soft b) cool c) easy d) hard

2 Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

important - cotton - clothes - flax - gold

- Noha : What did people use to make linen?
Nada : They used 1)
Noha : Why did people use linen?
Nada : They used it to make 2)
Noha : Was it 3)
Nada : Yes, it was.
Noha : Is your dress made of linen?
Nada : No, it's made of 4) ?

Final Revision

- Read and complete the text with words from the box.

Delta - fresh - countries - medicine - desert

Salt was a very important resource in ancient Egypt. Ancient Egyptians sold it to other 1), too. People used it to keep food 2) It was also useful in 3) and agriculture. Some of the lakes in the Nile 4) had lots of salt which people could take to use or sell.

3 Read the following text then answer the questions.

Last week, our class went on a trip to the waterfalls at Wadi El Rayan. It was beautiful! There are two lakes there: One at the **top** of the waterfalls and one at the bottom. The waterfalls are 67 meters high, so the sound of water falling is very loud. We couldn't hear our teacher talking very well! We learned that the water comes from an oasis in the desert. The water travels eight kilometers from the oasis to the lake through a tunnel.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- Our class went on a trip to the waterfalls of Wadi El
a) Rayan b) Degla c) Melook d) Kings
- The opposite of the underlined word "**top**" is
a) high b) bottom c) fast d) behind
- The waterfalls are meters high.
a) seventy-six b) sixty-seven c) ninety-seven d) seventy-nine

B) Answer the following questions.

- Where does water come from?
- How many lakes are there in Wadi El Rayan?

4

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d. (Vocabulary)

1. The sun and water are sources.
a) non-renewable b) renewable c) old d) new
2. If you water, it turns into steam.
a) cool b) freeze c) boil d) drink
3. If you water, it turns into ice.
a) melt b) heat c) boil d) freeze
4. To dig a hole in the mountains, take a
a) towel b) pot c) shadow d) shovel
5. They made linen for clothes from
a) gold b) wood c) flax d) metal
6. is easy to bend.
a) Gold b) Copper c) Iron d) Supper
7. Egyptians used as a medicine.
a) salt b) water c) honey d) milk
8. The ancient Egyptians made paper from
a) papyrus b) dates c) flax d) gold
9. People in ancient Egypt used to build houses.
a) gold b) coal c) mud d) salt
10. A person can't see.
a) deaf b) blind c) dumb d) funny
11. The old cheese has a bad
a) mass b) odor c) rough d) texture
12. The glue is thick and
a) rough b) hard c) sticky d) difficult
13. Ice is a
a) gas b) liquid c) solid d) steam
14. Today, we're going to a science experiment.
a) make b) do c) play d) eat

Final Revision

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d. (Grammar)

1. If I visited the museum, I be happy.
a) will b) would c) can d) may
2. If I a famous person, I wouldn't know what to say.
a) meet b) met c) meets d) meeting
3. If I have enough money, I buy a car.
a) will b) would c) could d) might
4. If I Cairo, I would go to the Egyptian Geological Museum.
a) visit b) visits c) visited d) visiting
5. If I in a hot air balloon, I wouldn't be frightened.
a) fly b) flies c) flew d) flying
6. If it hot outside, I wouldn't go out.
a) is b) was c) are d) am
7. If we go to the museum, we see dinosaur bones.
a) would b) could c) will d) might
8. If you put a stone on water, it will
a) sink b) sinks c) sank d) sinking
9. Omar said he reading comics.
a) like b) likes c) liked d) liking
10. Soha said she usually fruit for breakfast.
a) have b) has c) had d) having
11. Amira said she play the guitar.
a) could b) can c) may d) will
12. Adel said he walk to school.
a) will b) would c) may d) can
13. Waleed said he going to play tennis.
a) is b) are c) am d) was
14. Mona said she to the park.
a) go b) went c) goes d) going

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

5

Put the words in the correct order to make sentences

1. Wael's - is - Which - favorite - bird - ?
2. as - honey - People - a medicine - used - .
3. make - used - People - linen - clothes - to - .
4. old - has - The - cheese - a bad - odor - .

6

Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

Mud

Guiding questions:

1. Who used it?
2. What did they use it for?
3. Where did they take it?
4. What did they make from it?
5. Was it important?

- Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

Wadi El Rayan Waterfalls

Guiding elements:

(trip - two lakes - 67 meters high - loud)

Unit (4)

We're on the move

Vocabulary

pedal	بَدَال	skateboard	لوح تزلج
brakes	فرامل	physics	فيزياء
wheel	عجلة	builder	عامل بناء
speed	سرعة	inventor	مخترع
push force	قوة الدفع	feathers	ريش
pull force	قوة السحب	land	يهبط
friction	احتكاك	hurt	يؤذي
space	فضاء	invent	يخترع
tension	ضغط	fall over	يقع - يسقط
air resistance	مقاومة الهواء	tires	إطارات
gravity	جاذبية	rope	حبل
dart	سهم	hook	خطاف
paper airplane	طائرة ورقية	fold	يثني
vertically	عمودياً	turn over	يقطب
crease	يضغط / يجعد	ground	الأرض
glider	طائرة شراعية	desert	صحراء
tip	طرف	float	يطفو
astronaut	رائد فضاء	interested in	مهتم بـ
normal	طبيعي	planet	كوكب
special	خاص / مميز	Mars	المريخ
tour	جولة	company	شركة
stadium	استاد	project	مشروع
engineer	مهندس	solve	يحل
pilot	طيار	apartment	شقة
trampoline	نطاطة	architecture	هندسة معمارية
parachute	باراشوت	architect	مهندس معماري

Question tag

السؤال المذيّل

It has two parts.

يتكون من جزئين.

(1) a sentence , (2) question tag?

Usage

We use it to check or confirm information.

نستخدم السؤال المذيّل للتحقق من المعلومات أو تأكيدها.

Form

The question tag is formed of:

يتكون السؤال المذيّل من:

helping verb / modal verb + subject pronoun?

فعل مساعد

فعل ناقص

ضمير فاعل

Notes

1 positive sentence , negative tag?

e.g. You live in Egypt, don't you?

2 negative sentence , positive tag?

e.g. Ali didn't go home, did he?

3 We use a comma before the question tag.

e.g. He has played football, hasn't he?

General Activities

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- Amal is interested in the stars and
a) plants b) planets c) leaves d) roots
- It is to study other planets.
a) useless b) important c) bad d) ugly
- Understanding planets might help us solve some of Earth's
a) grounds b) floors c) cycles d) problems
- It looks living without gravity.
a) sad b) bad c) fun d) boring

- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- Karim decided to be a
a) pilot b) doctor c) teacher d) dentist
- Karim went to an airplane festival with mum and
a) uncle b) dad c) brother d) sister
- They saw lots of different
a) bikes b) cars c) planes d) buses
- The planes were flying around in a
a) square b) place c) club d) circle

2 Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

float - sun - stars - fall - important

- Anas : What does gravity do?
Seif : It makes things 1) to the ground.
Anas : What will happen if there is no gravity?
Seif : People will 2) in the air.
Anas : What does gravity do to the planets?
Seif : It keeps the planets moving around the 3)
Anas : So gravity is 4) to the earth.
Seif : You are right.

Read and complete the text with words from the box.

clocks - telling - years - scientist - saying

People around the world invented water clocks. They were the best for
1) the time correctly. In 1656 a 2) invented
the first modern clock. These new 3) became the best way
to tell the time. But water clocks were very important for many 4)

3 Read the following text then answer the questions.

Sherif wanted to be an engineer when he was 10 years old. He always watched TV programs about robots, and he loved making things. When he was 13, he started helping a robot design company online. He did his school work in the day and in the evening he worked on his own company.

He said that the science and math lessons at school helped him to learn how to solve problems. He also found English very useful as it helps him work with people across the world. He is now learning Japanese so he can talk to people in Japan.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- Sherif started helping a design company online.
a) toy b) robot c) doll d) electric
- The underlined pronoun "it" refers to
a) English b) French c) Japanese d) Arabic
- Sherif is now learning
a) Japanese b) English c) French d) Spanish

B) Answer the following questions.

1. When did he do his school work?

2. What did he want to be when he was 10 years old?

4

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d. (Vocabulary)

1. Judy wants to fly planes. She'd like to be a / an
a) astronaut b) engineer c) pilot d) architect
2. Adam likes studying the planets. He wants to be a/an
a) astronaut b) teacher c) farmer d) doctor
3. Ali would like to help to build new bridges. He'd like to be a/ an
a) nurse b) gardener c) engineer d) astronaut
4. You can use when you want a bike to stop or slow down.
a) brakes b) pedals c) seats d) wheels
5. You use a force to jump on a trampoline.
a) push b) pull c) air d) resistance
6. Abbas Ibn Firnas was a/an
a) engineer b) architect c) inventor d) pilot
7. When you open the fridge door, you are using a force.
a) push b) gravity c) pull d) resistance
8. He made two to help him fly like a bird.
a) wings b) feathers c) beaks d) legs
9. End your email with
a) See you soon b) Hi c) Hello d) Welcome
10. Begin your email with
a) By for now b) See you soon c) Hi d) Welcome
11. She is interested using renewable resources.
a) at b) on c) in d) of
12. A person who works in space is called a/an
a) architect b) astronaut c) teacher d) doctor
13. between the bike tyres and the road stops you from falling.
a) Friction b) Gravity c) Tension d) Spring force
14. To increase the speed of the bike, you must the pedals more quickly.
a) push b) pull c) run d) jump

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d. (Grammar)

1. The children visited the science museum today,
a) did b) didn't c) do d) don't they?
2. People see some interesting things there, can't they?
a) can b) will c) are d) can't
3. Their teacher won't give them a lot of homework,
a) can't b) didn't c) will d) do he?
4. The science museum far from the city center, is it?
a) is b) isn't c) can d) can't
5. Khaled's sister is 12 years old,
a) won't b) don't c) can't d) isn't she?
6. Mr Hassan doesn't drive cars.
a) is b) can c) does d) will he?
7. I'll be in your class next year,
a) am b) do c) can't d) won't I?
8. Rania play the guitar, can't she?
a) can b) can't c) will d) won't
9. We won't be late,
a) do b) are c) can d) will we?
10. Eman didn't go to the park,
a) is b) can c) will d) did she?
11. There isn't any coffee in the cupboard,
a) did b) does c) is d) can there?
12. She tell me her name, did she?
a) isn't b) didn't c) doesn't d) won't
13. You will send Grandpa an email,
a) don't b) won't c) can't d) mustn't you?
14. We can make dinner tonight,
a) won't b) don't c) can't d) didn't we?

Final Revision

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences

1. some - to - talk - I - my friends - had - time - to - .

2. a great - was - Abbas Ibn Firnas - inventor - .

3. air - The - into - children - up - the - flew - .

4. gravity - there - space - Is - in - ?

6 Write an email of FIFTY (50) words.

To your friend Safia about your future job. Your name is Anas.

Guiding elements:

(teacher - interesting - children - hard - school)

- Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

Gravity

Guiding elements:

(fall - force - float - air - planets - moving)

(1) محافظة القليوبية

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- Rainforests are characterized by climatic conditions throughout the year.
a) cold b) snowy c) warm d) stormy
- The average temperature there ranges from 72 to 93 degrees Fahrenheit.
a) recorded b) played c) needed d) weeded
- Rainforests are the equator.
a) far b) near c) south d) north
- A huge of animals can live in the rainforests.
a) variety b) possibility c) probability d) ability

2 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

waterfalls - sand - made - Nile - making

The valley of Wadi El-Rayan is an area of 1759 km². It is located about 65 km southwest of Fayum city and 80 km west of the

1) River.

The Wadi has been used for man- 2) lakes from agricultural drainage which has made a reserve of the two separate Wadi El Rayan Lakes. Among the springs, there are three sulphur springs, with extensive mobile 3) dunes.

Wadi El Rayan waterfalls are considered to be the largest 4) in Egypt.

3

Read the following text then answer the questions.

A body system is a collection of parts able to work together to serve a common purpose - growth, reproduction and survival. Each part of a system depends on the other parts to perform tasks that can't be achieved by single parts acting alone. Our bodies are made up of countless cells all requiring oxygen to carry out the important process of respiration. In this process cells use oxygen gas and produce carbon dioxide gas - a waste product that must be removed from the body. The process of breathing allows these gases to be exchanged between the blood and lungs.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- The underlined words "able to" mean
 a) can b) can't c) must d) mustn't
- Our bodies are made up of cells.
 a) counted b) countless c) few d) no
- Cells use gas and produce carbon dioxide.
 a) oxygen b) carbon dioxide c) oil d) petrol

B) Answer the following questions.

- Why do parts of the body work together?

- Where can oxygen and carbon dioxide gases be exchanged?

4

The Reader

A Read and write T (True) or F (False).

- Jubari drank a lot of salty water.
- Wadi El Gemal is Wadi of the Camels.
- Dugongs eat leaves from mangrove trees.
- The beach was too sandy.

B Complete the following sentences:

1. Jubari's mother showed him which to eat.
2. Ras Hankorab beach was a place for

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. You look right and left before crossing the road.
a) must b) mustn't c) can't d) won't
2. I finished my homework yet.
a) won't b) hasn't c) don't d) haven't
3. Karma didn't to the park yesterday.
a) went b) goes c) go d) going
4. If I had enough money, I buy a new car.
a) will b) would c) have d) has
5. Hazem is Adam's cousin lives in the Sinai Peninsula.
a) who b) which c) where d) when
6. Fares ever traveled by train?
a) Does b) Has c) Have d) Will

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. dangerous - is - warming - for - Global - the Earth - .
2. the tallest - mountain - in - is - Africa - Mount Kilimanjaro - .
3. beauty - rainforest - There's - in the - so much - Amazon - .

7 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

Natural resources

Guiding words:

(renewable - sun - soil - nature - solar energy - non-renewable
- fossil fuels - coal)

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Nabq is a very big national park in South
a) Africa b) America c) Sinai d) pole
2. Along the coast, there is a mangrove
a) forest b) animal c) fire d) food
3. Mangrove trees can grow in the water.
a) sugar b) juicy c) milky d) salt
4. Mangrove trees have amazing
a) boots b) roots c) stems d) leaves

2 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

more - regularly - cycle - important - sleep

Your heart beats over 100.000 times a day! So it is 1) to keep your heart healthy. When you walk, run, swim, or 2) you make your heart work harder. If you exercise 3) your heart works better and you can get the minerals, nutrients, and oxygen you need 4) easily.

3 Read the following text then answer the questions.

The Amazon Rainforest is the world's largest tropical rainforest. It covers an area of nearly 2.8 million square miles, which is about the size of the continent of Australia. The Amazon Rainforest gets its life from the majestic Amazon River, the world's second largest river, which runs directly through the heart of the region. There is a clear link between the health of the Amazon and the health of the planet. The rainforests help the local and global climate. Deforestation releases significant amounts of carbon, which has **negative** results around the world.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- The main idea of the passage is the
a) Nile Valley b) Amazon Rainforest c) Thames path d) Seine River
- The word "**negative**" means not
a) positive b) transitive c) initiative d) detective
- Deforestation releases significant amount of
a) oxygen b) nitrogen c) carbon d) oil

B) Answer the following questions.

- What is the world's largest tropical rainforest?
.....
- How does the Amazon Rainforest get its life?
.....



The Reader

A Read and write T (True) or F (False).

- Jubari is a dorcas gazelle.
- Jubari was very weak.
- Predators are dangerous animals.
- Acacia trees give gazelles candies.

☐
☐
☐
☐

B Complete the following sentences:

- For the first year of his life, Jubari followed his
- Jubari and Subira live in the wadi of the

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- We learned about the area we live.
a) who b) that c) where d) which
- Nadine goes to the pool she likes swimming.
a) so b) but c) and d) because

Final Revision

3. He has lived here twenty years.
a) for b) since c) ago d) in
4. She hasn't arrived
a) just b) yet c) never d) ever
5. If I a lot of money, I'd build a home for animals.
a) have b) had c) has d) having
6. The children visited the science museum, they?
a) don't b) didn't c) doesn't d) aren't

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. a garden - who - a man - met - We - works in - .
.....
2. a ship - travelled - ever - you - on - Have - ?
.....
3. parents - Kamal's - are - chasers - storm - .
.....

7 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

A job you would like to do in the future

Guiding words:

(doctor - help - sick - examine - patients - give- medicine - work -
hospital - travel - abroad - charity)

(3) إدارة إيدكو

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Jana would love to be a/an
 a) vet b) teacher c) engineer d) doctor
2. You need to understand to be an engineer.
 a) music b) science c) maths d) art
3. An engineer's job sounds really
 a) interesting b) terrible c) boring d) bad
4. Engineers make things such as skateboards and
 a) roads b) windows c) tables d) chairs

2 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

fish - hives - medicine - sweet - Honey

People keep bees to make honey in ancient Egypt. 1) was an expensive but an important natural resource. People used it to make food taste 2) They used honey as a 3) too. If you cut yourself, you could put honey on the cut. People made long, round houses out of clay for the bees. Then they put the clay bee houses called 4) on top of each other.

3 Read the following text then answer the questions.

Adel is a carpenter. He has a big workshop. He gets up at six o'clock in the morning. He has breakfast with his family. Then, he goes to his workshop. He makes tables and chairs. He likes his job. Adel has two daughters and a son. His son is older than his daughters. On Friday, he doesn't go to work. He likes watching TV with his family. Mr Adel is very kind and helpful. All people like him and respect him.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Adel has daughters.
a) one b) two c) three d) no
2. A carpenter can make
a) bread b) chairs c) pizza d) cows
3. Adel doesn't go to work on
a) Saturday b) Friday c) Sunday d) Monday

B) Answer the following questions.

4. What is Adel's job?

5. When does Adel get up?

4

The Reader

A Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. Jubari was brave and curious.
2. The mangroves were too sweet.
3. Wadi el Gemal isn't the perfect place for gazelles.
4. Jubari was born in Wadi el Gemal.

B Complete the following sentences:

1. Subira was Jubari's
2. The sea water was very

5

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. I have a friend is very good at tennis.
a) which b) when c) who d) where
2. Fish, chicken beans are all healthy food.
a) because b) so c) and d) but

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

3. Have you fish soup?
 a) eat b) eaten c) eats d) eating
4. If we go to the museum, we will dinosaur bones.
 a) sees b) see c) saw d) seen
5. I to Greece last year.
 a) travel b) will travel c) travels d) traveled
6. This bird can fly, it?
 a) can b) can't c) will d) won't

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. hens - She - the - fed - already - has - .
2. , Hany - Where - you - yesterday - go - did - ?
3. the rain - for - We - wait - must - .

7 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

A school trip

Guiding words:

(Last week - went - museum - friends - bus - took photos- nice time
 - came back - happy)

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Nabq is a very big national in South Sinai.
a) mark b) park c) dark d) garden
2. Heba learnt that the mangrove trees can grow in
a) dirty water b) fresh water c) salt water d) polluted water
3. The mangrove trees the living things and the non-living things in the marine ecosystem.
a) protect b) destroy c) eat d) damage
4. Last week, Heba went on a school to Nabq.
a) book b) bus c) gate d) trip

2 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

read - exercise - healthy - design - wonders

My teacher gave us some advice. He told us to eat 1) food and do 2) He said we must protect the environment and man-made 3) He also told us to 4) books to gain knowledge.

3 Read the following text then answer the questions.

People have kept bees to make honey for a long time. In ancient Egypt, people kept **them** to make honey which was an expensive, but important natural resource. Most people liked honey because it could be used for many different things. People used it to make food taste sweet. They used it as a medicine, too. If you cut yourself, you could put some honey on the cut. Really, honey is one of the most important things that must be found in our houses because it has a lot of uses.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- The underlined word "them" refers to
a) honey b) bees c) ancient Egyptians d) medicine
- People used honey to make food taste
a) salty b) sweat c) sour d) sweet
- In fact, honey is very in our houses.
a) happy b) ugly c) necessary d) funny

B) Answer the following questions.

4. Why did people like honey?

5. How can you use honey as a medicine?

4

The Reader

A Read and write T (True) or F (False).

- Jubari wasn't very brave.
- The mangrove forest was too salty for Jubari.
- Jubari was born in Wadi el Gemal in the Eastern Desert.
- Subira taught Jubari to stay away from predators.

B Complete the following sentences.

- Subira is Jubari's
- Jubari can't run in Ras Hankorab beach because the sand is very

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- This is the house I live.
a) when b) where c) which d) who
- I am ill, I am going to see a doctor.
a) because b) but c) so d) as

Final Revision

3. Have you seen a snake?
a) ever b) never c) for d) since
4. Would you like some water?
a) have b) to have c) having d) had
5. he is strong, he can't carry the box.
a) Since b) Although c) Despite d) As
6. Ahmed is as as Nabil.
a) taller b) tallest c) the tallest d) tall

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. his - friend - **He** - visiting - is - old - .
.....
2. **It's** - to - important - a healthy - have - diet - .
.....
3. study - you - succeed - **If** - hard, - will - you - .
.....

7 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

Cotton

Guiding words:

(grow - Nile Delta - clothes - good for - renewable)

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

(5) إدارة بندر كفر الدوار

1

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Yosof wants to be a / an
 a) doctor b) astronaut c) pilot d) engineer
2. People without float all the time.
 a) stars b) sun c) water d) gravity
3. Yosof is interested in the and the planets.
 a) stars b) sports c) clothes d) foods
4. help us solve some of the Earth's problems.
 a) Rainbow b) Walls c) Clothes d) Plants

2

Read and complete the text with words from the box.

liquid - solid - change - into - change

We can see the matter in three states. Solids, liquids and gases can

- 1) from one state to another. When you boil water, it turns
- 2) steam. If you freeze water, it becomes 3) When
- ice gets warm, it melts and becomes 4)

3

Read the following text then answer the questions.

Parks are very important for us. People go to the parks to walk, relax and breathe fresh air. It's healthy and important for our hearts to do exercise and relax. In the parks, we find trees, flowers and grass where people can enjoy nice time. Children can find a safe place to play, run and laugh in front of the eyes of their parents. People can usually go to the parks on Fridays. They take food and drink with them. We should keep the parks **clean**. We should put litter in bins to keep them clean.

Final Revision

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- We put litter in bins to keep the park clean.
a) should b) are c) shouldn't d) mustn't
- It is for children to go the parks.
a) dangerous b) unsafe c) safe d) save
- The underlined word "clean" is the opposite of
a) clear b) calm c) happy d) dirty

B) Answer the following questions.

4. Why do people go to the parks?

5. What can we find in the parks?

4 The Reader

A Read and write T (True) or F (False).

- Seagrass grows under the sea.
- Lake Nasser is a natural lake.
- Jubari met the turtle first.
- The turtle laid its eggs in the sand.

B Complete the following sentences.

- The sea water was very for Jubari.
- Subira showed Jubari where to rest on days.

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- Ahmed played football scored two goals.
a) and b) so c) but d) because
- This is the school I and my brothers learn.
a) who b) which c) where d) why

Our heart

a) have beaten b) beats

c) beat

d) is beaten

over 100.000 times a day.

If there

a) is

b) was

c) has

d) had

volcano, we will see smoke and lava.

She got the full mark

a) and

b) so

c) because

d) but

she studied hard.

Omar said he

a) can

b) could

c) will

d) may

do homework.

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. is - wood - made - A chair - of - .

2. Emad - visited - uncle - has - his - .

3. is - important - Why - the sun - ?

7 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

My favorite job

Guiding words:

(work hard - study - wear - help - build)

(6) إدارة الغردقة

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Youssef is on a vacation with his
a) friends b) family c) brothers d) cousins
2. Dahab is near the
a) Red Sea b) Sinai c) Luxor d) Cairo
3. The water in Dahab is so
a) cold b) warm c) hot d) cool
4. Youssef enjoys in the sea.
a) diving b) sailing c) swimming d) fishing

2 Read and complete the dialoge with words from the box.

bad - saw - interesting - go - Luxor

- Sama : Where did you 1) last week?
Rana : I went to 2)
Sama : What did you see there?
Rana : I 3) the Valley of the Kings.
Sama : Was it 4) ?
Rana : Yes, it was very interesting.

3 Read the following text then answer the questions.

My name's Amir. I'm eleven years old. I like English, but art is my favorite subject. I like painting in my free time. I live in Hurghade. My friends are Adel and Ali. Adel is eleven too, but Ali is twelve. Adel is very good at sports. He loves karate. He plays in a football team, too. Ali is good at languages. He speaks English very well. He often talks to his cousin in England.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- Ali often talks to his in England.
a) friend b) cousin c) brother d) grandfather
- Amir's favorite subject is
a) art b) music c) Arabic d) math
- Adel is years old.
a) ten b) eleven c) nine d) twelve

B) Answer the following questions.

4. What does Amir like doing in his free time?

5. Who are Amir's friends?

4

The Reader

A) Read and write T (True) or F (False).

- Jubari found the Wadi for gazelles.
- Lake Nasser is a man-made lake.
- Wadi El Gemal isn't a perfect place for gazelles.
- Subira taught Jubari which animals were dangerous.

B) Complete the following sentences.

- Jubari learned to run away very
- Jubari couldn't drink the sea water because it was

5

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- Have you ever a cake?
a) made b) make c) making d) makes
- We met a man works in a garden.
a) where b) which c) who d) when

Final Revision

3. The colorful birds on the tree are very
a) beauty b) patient c) luck d) beautiful
4. We didn't the zoo yesterday.
a) visits b) visit c) visited d) visiting
5. Without rain, the grass grow.
a) can b) will c) might d) can't
6. I don't play basketball, I play volleyball.
a) so b) but c) because d) and

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. didn't - I - meet - my - yesterday - friend - .
.....
2. water - Mangrove - in - grow - trees - salt - .
.....
3. you - ever - Have - to - travelled - Cairo - ?
.....

7 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

How to keep healthy

Guiding words:

(fruit - vegetables - exercise - water)

Test (7)

1

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Mangrove trees help the in different ways.
a) beach b) environment c) village d) country
2. Mangrove trees protect the non-living things and the living things in the ecosystem.
a) marine b) river c) mountain d) desert
3. The deep stop the sand from moving away.
a) leaves b) roots c) plants d) seeds
4. This ecosystem is a safe for many animals.
a) house b) village c) home d) cave

2

Read and complete the text with words from the box.

gravity - astronaut - float - problems - planets

I am Amal. I want to be an 1) because I am interested in the stars and the 2) It's important to study other planets because it helps us understand our own planet, and this might help us solve some of the earth's 3) When you see videos of the International Space Station, it looks fun to live without gravity. The people 4) all the time.

3

Read the following text then answer the questions.

Mohamed Salah is my favorite sports star. He plays football for a very good team in Europe. He plays for Egypt too. He is very good at scoring goals. He is a **fast** runner and clever footballer.

Mohamed Salah has usually got a big smile. He is quite short for a footballer. He is 1.75 meters tall. Mohamed Salah has got dark curly hair and a beard. He is a kind person. He gives money to build schools and

hospitals in Egypt. He also gives money to help poor people. He is very friendly and always talks to his fans.

He has not got much time for hobbies, but when he is at home, he often enjoys playing video games and watching films.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. One of Salah's hobbies is
 - a) giving money to poor
 - b) building schools
 - c) getting much time
 - d) playing video games
2. He gives money to build
 - a) hotels
 - b) theaters
 - c) schools
 - d) post offices
3. The underlined word "**fast**" is the opposite of
 - a) quick
 - b) quiet
 - c) slow
 - d) happy

B) Answer the following questions.

4. What sport does Mohamed Salah play?

5. Who does Salah talk to?

4

The Reader

A Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. Jubari is a brave and curious son.
2. Jubari found Wadi of the Gazelles.
3. Jubari was born in Wadi el Gemal.
4. Acacia trees don't need gazelles.

B Complete the following sentences:

1. Subira taught Jubari which were dangerous.
2. Jubari and Subira's favorite food was

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

5

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. We can't take photos in here, we?
a) can't b) will c) can d) do
2. It was not very cold yesterday, it?
a) was b) was not c) is not d) do not
3. Mary make lunch for family. She is still young.
a) will b) can c) must not d) can't
4. This is Ali has a cough.
a) who b) where c) which d) when
5. Omar said that he the story.
a) like b) likes c) will like d) liked
6. If I met a famous person, I know what to say.
a) won't b) wouldn't c) can't d) don't

6

Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. with - of - The parts - the forest - the ecosystem - interact - .
.....
2. your - beat - How - does - heart - often - ?
.....
3. to - eat - catch - Can - we - a rabbit - ?
.....

7

Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

Guiding words:

Rain

(Rain - important - living things - plants - grow - drink - animals - humans)

Test (8)

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. In some ways, humans are similar to
a) plants b) water c) sun d) sky
2. Our move blood away from our heart.
a) veins b) arteries c) bones d) muscles
3. Our carry blood to the heart.
a) bones b) stomach c) veins d) arteries
4. We don't use like plants do.
a) oxygen b) carbon dioxide c) water d) food

2 Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

ate - found - dinosaur - mountains - home

- Grandpa : What are you doing tomorrow, children?
- Donia : We are going into the 1) with Dad. There were dinosaur bones in the mountains.
- Tarek : What would we do if we 2) dinosaur bones?
- Donia : I would take them 3) Here's the shovel. Let's start digging.
- Tarek : Look! I've found a bone. Is it a 4) bone?
- Donia : I don't think they're heavy enough to be dinosaur bones. It's just an animal bone.

3 Read the following text then answer the questions.

There were many natural resources in **ancient** Egypt. Egyptians used honey to make medicine. It was very important for helping with problems with the skin or eyes. There are hieroglyphics in ancient temples

which show people keeping bees. People used papyrus. It is a strong plant to make things such as baskets and sandals, but the most important thing people made from it was paper. The ancient Egyptians made some of the first books in the world using it.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- Egyptians used for helping with problems with the skin.
a) linen b) papyrus c) honey d) flax
- The underlined word "**ancient**" means very
a) new b) old c) fast d) big
- The hieroglyphics in ancient temples show people keeping
a) hens b) bees c) birds d) cows

B) Answer the following questions.

4. Who used honey to treat health problems?

5. What was papyrus used for?



The Reader

A Read and write T (True) or F (False).

- Jubari was born in Wadi el Gemal.
- Acacia trees don't need gazelles.
- The first animal Jubari met was a dugong.
- Lake Nasser is a natural lake.

B Complete the following sentences:

- Jubari was and curious.
- The mountains were too

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- We met a man works as a doctor.
a) who b) which c) when d) where
- Where have you ?
a) be b) been c) are d) being
- If I the king, I wouldn't know what to say.
a) meet b) will meet c) met d) would meet
- Salma can't swim, she?
a) can b) will c) does d) can't
- Malak has a book is about medicinal plants.
a) who b) where c) when d) which
- They to Jordan two years ago.
a) go b) went c) have gone d) will go

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

- Crater - The Ngorongoro - is - square - kilometers - 260 -
.....
- lives - What - in - forests - mangrove - ?
.....
- the USA - to - Has - traveled - Mr Kamal - ?
.....

7 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

An ecosystem

Guiding words:

(animals - plants - area - big - interact - species)

Test (9)

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Mount Kilimanjaro is made of volcanoes.
a) two b) thirty c) three d) four
2. Kilimanjaro is the tallest mountain in
a) Africa b) Europe c) America d) Australia
3. It's to climb Kilimanjaro.
a) easy b) nice c) difficult d) good
4. There is snow and at the top.
a) water b) gas c) ice d) fall

2 Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

Where - Which - haven't - been - Have

- Sondos : Have you travelled abroad, Dad?
- Father : Yes, I have 1) to many European countries.
- Sondos : 2) you been to Italy?
- Father : Yes, I have been to Italy.
- Sondos : Have you visited England?
- Father : No, I 3)
- Sondos : 4) country did you like most?
- Father : I liked France most.

3 Read the following text then answer the questions.

Last year I visited the Winter Palace in St. Petersburg in Russia. It was such a fantastic trip. In this Palace there are marble and gold everywhere with huge chandeliers hanging from the ceiling. The light

made everything shiny. The Winter Palace is full of treasures from the past. I really enjoyed the amazing views over the river Neva. I had to walk a lot so I wore comfortable shoes. Going to the Palace in the morning is much better than going in the afternoon, because there were long queues in the afternoon. I hope I can go there one more time.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. I visited the Winter Palace
 a) yesterday b) last week c) last year d) last month
2. The Winter Palace is on the river
 a) Nile b) Thames c) Neva d) Seine
3. The underlined word "It" refers to the
 a) Winter Palace b) trip c) Summer Palace d) castle

B) Answer the following questions.

4. Where is the Winter Palace?

5. Why did the visitor wear comfortable shoes?



The Reader

A) Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. Jubari looked for Donga.
2. The beach was too sandy.
3. Wadi el Gemal isn't a perfect place for gazelles.
4. Subira taught Jubari which animals were dangerous.

B) Complete the following sentences:

1. The sea water was very for Jubari.
2. The dugong lives in the forest.

5

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Have you seen a lion?
a) ever b) never c) yet d) just
2. Huda likes tennis she doesn't like basketball.
a) and b) so c) because d) but
3. If I a lot of money, I'll buy a new car.
a) have b) has c) had d) will have
4. This is a place it sometimes snows.
a) where b) who c) when d) which
5. Their teacher give them a lot of homework, will she?
a) will b) won't c) can't d) doesn't
6. My parents the fire service if we see a fire.
a) call b) will call c) calls d) called

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. can - What - we - do - with - natural - resources - ?
.....
2. don't - They - look - normal - shoes - like - .
.....
3. cupboard - coffee - isn't - There - any - in - the - .
.....

7 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

Natural Wonders

Guiding words:

The Sahara Desert - largest - eleven - countries - Mount Kilimanjaro
- three - volcanoes - tallest)

Test (10)

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. The kingfisher visited her , the lizard, in a mangrove tree.
a) friend b) mother c) father d) teacher
2. The lizard was
a) excited b) happy c) delighted d) sad
3. When the people came to the mangrove forest, they cut down
a) grass b) flowers c) trees d) leaves
4. After cutting trees, it was difficult for the lizard to find to eat.
a) food b) figs c) fish d) birds

2

Read and complete the text with words from the box.

sweet - snakes - because - Honey - bees

People kept 1) to make honey in ancient Egypt over 4.500 years ago. 2) was an expensive but an important natural resource. Everyone liked it 3) you could use it for many different things. People used it to make food taste 4) They used it as a medicine, too. If you cut yourself, you could put honey on the cut.

3

Read the following text then answer the questions.

I'm Amal. I want to be an astronaut because I'm interested in stars and the planets. It is important to study other planets because it helps us understand our own planet, and this might help us solve some of Earth's problems. When you see videos of the International Space Station, it looks fun living without gravity. The people float all the time. I have read a lot about the planet Mars and the research scientists are doing.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- Amal wants to be a/an
 a) doctor b) pilot c) engineer d) astronaut
- Living without will make people float all the time.
 a) gravity b) flood c) food d) water
- The underlined word "float" is the opposite of
 a) sing b) sink c) think d) run

B) Answer the following questions.

4. Why is it important to study planets?

5. Why do people float into space?

4 The Reader

A Read and write T (True) or F (False).

- The sea water was fresh.
- The Gebel Elba is very steep for Jubari's legs.
- The mangroves were too salty.
- Jubari was brave and curious.

B Complete the following sentences:

- Subira showed Jubari where to rest on
- Jubari and Subira's favorite food was

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- She has been to France.
 a) never b) yet c) since d) for
- Their teacher won't give them homework, he?
 a) will b) won't c) can d) is

Final Revision

3. She has fish rice for lunch.
a) but b) so c) because d) and
4. They to Jordan two years ago.
a) go b) went c) have gone d) goes
5. If my family to the park later, I'd tell you.
a) go b) went c) will go d) goes
6. These are the girls are very good at maths.
a) who b) which c) when d) where

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. would - was - there - What - gravity - no - happen - if - ?
.....
2. park - the - I - like - visiting - .
.....
3. the environment - will - How - you - help - ?
.....

7 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

What do you want to be?

Guiding words:

(astronaut - study - stars - planets - space station - gravity)

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Egyptian people kept to make honey.
a) goats b) buffaloes c) dogs d) bees
2. In ancient Egypt, honey was
a) cheap b) expensive c) hot d) cold
3. Honey is an important resource.
a) man-made b) natural c) artificial d) useless
4. People used honey to make food taste
a) sweet b) salty c) sour d) awful

2 Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

family - train - been - Why - When

- Dalia : Where have you been?
Rania : I have 1) to Luxor.
Dalia : 2) did you go there?
Rania : To see the temples and enjoy the warm weather.
Dalia : How did you go there?
Rania : By 3)
Dalia : Who did you go with?
Rania : I went there with my 4)

3 Read the following text then answer the questions.

Many people prefer to live in towns and big cities like Cairo and Alexandria. **They** are attracted by their lights, tall buildings and clubs. Many people leave their villages and live in towns where the chances of work are found. They work in big shops and restaurants and earn much money. Those people have forgotten that they're in need of the village

and its crops, vegetables and fruits. Without the farmer, people would suffer much.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Clubs and tall buildings are found in the
a) village b) city c) park d) farm
2. People can go to the to have a meal.
a) cinema b) theatre c) restaurant d) bakery
3. People in cities can earn money.
a) many b) few c) much d) little

B) Answer the following questions.

4. Why do many people prefer to live in big cities?
.....
5. What does the underlined word "**They**" refer to?
.....

4 The Reader

A Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. Jubari can run fast in Ras Hankorab beach.
2. Jubari found Wadi of gazelles.
3. There were a lot of acacia trees in the desert.
4. Jubari was Subira's son.

☐
☐
☐
☐

B Complete the following sentences:

1. The people made Lake Nasser because they needed
2. Gebel Elba is very

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- I always eat healthy diet. I exercise every day.
a) and b) but c) so d) because
- My father has by bus.
a) travel b) traveled c) travels d) traveling
- If she hard, she'll pass the exam.
a) study b) studies c) studied d) will study
- She English, didn't she?
a) likes b) liked c) will like d) is liked
- Mr Hassan drive cars, does he?
a) don't b) doesn't c) isn't d) hasn't
- Yesterday they to go on a trip.
a) decide b) decides c) decided d) will decide

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

- traveled - on - Have - a - ship - you - ?
- is - largest - Cairo - in - the - Egypt - city - .
- weather - study - Storm - chasers - extreme - .

7 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

Guiding words: Resources in ancient Egypt

(successful - flax - linen - papyrus - books)

Test (12)

تعليم الصف الرابع

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- Mangrove trees can grow in water.
a) fresh b) salt c) sweet d) sour
- Mangrove forests the marine ecosystem.
a) protect b) damage c) destroy d) kill
- The leaves of mangrove trees take more from the air than other trees.
a) oxygen b) carbon dioxide c) water d) gas
- Bees make special honey from the of mangrove trees.
a) roots b) leaves c) stems d) flowers

2 Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

friend - went - What - How - go

- Tom : Where did you go at the weekend?
Ann : I 1) to the club.
Tom : 2) did you go there?
Ann : By car.
Tom : Who did you go with?
Ann : I went with my 3)
Tom : 4) did you play?
Ann : I played tennis.

3 Read the following text then answer the questions.

During the summer holiday, Karim, his brother and sister went to Alexandria. One day they thought it was a nice idea to hire a boat as the weather was **lovely**. They hired a boat for ten pounds. They rowed till they were far from the shore. Suddenly the waves became very high, and the boat turned up side down. The children **splashed** for help. A man heard their

shouts and quickly took off his clothes, jumped into the water and swam to them. He was able to save them and bring them safely to the shore.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. They hired a boat because the weather was
 a) bad b) ugly c) lovely d) terrible
2. The underlined word "**lovely**" means weather.
 a) bad b) cold c) hot d) fine
3. Summer is a
 a) sport b) season c) year d) month

B) Answer the following questions.

4. Where did Karim go during the summer holiday?

.....

5. What was their idea?

.....

4

The Reader

A Read and write T (True) or F (False).

- 1 The acacia trees leaves give gazelles food and water.
- 2 Jubari learnt a lot from his father.
- 3 Jubari is going to look for Wadi of the Gazelles.
- 4 Jubari was thirsty, so he tried to drink.

☐
☐
☐
☐

B Complete the following sentences:

- 1 Subira showed Jubari which to eat.
- 2 They got enough water from the tree.

Final Revision

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- I passed the exam I studied hard.
a) so b) because c) and d) but
- If I a lot of money, I would buy a car.
a) has b) have c) had d) haven't
- There isn't any grass to eat, so the rabbits be hungry.
a) can b) can't c) will d) won't
- She hasn't done her homework
a) since b) just c) for d) yet
- Khaled's sister is 12 years old,?
a) isn't he b) isn't she c) hasn't he d) hasn't she
- It hot yesterday.
a) will be b) isn't c) won't be d) wasn't

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

- met - We - who - a man - a garden - works - in - .
.....
- do - you - What - is - natural - think - a - resource - ?
.....
- trees - cut - came - People - and - down - some - .
.....

7 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

Guiding words:

The mangrove trees

(important - marine ecosystem - leaves - thick - animals - live)

.....

.....

.....

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. The lava and mix with mud flows.
a) flash b) ash c) splash d) crash
2. This makes soil where good food grows.
a) bad b) fertile c) sad d) ugly
3. The thank the volcanoes for helping them.
a) doctors b) farmers c) teachers d) bakers
4. Farmers are very at the end.
a) worried b) afraid c) sad d) happy

2 Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

Did - What - stories - Do - fine

- Tarek : How are you, Ahmed?
- Ahmed : I'm 1), thanks.
- Tarek : 2) are you doing now?
- Ahmed : I'm doing my English homework.
- Tarek : 3) you like English?
- Ahmed : Yes, I like English very much.
- Tarek : Do you read 4) in English?
- Ahmed : Yes, they are my favorite.

3 Read the following text then answer the questions.

Sherif wanted to be an engineer when he was 10 years old. He always watched TV programs about robots, and he loved making things. When he was 13, he started helping a robot design company online. He did his school work in the day and in the evening he worked on his robot projects. This experience helped him to **start** his own company.

He said that the science and math lessons at school helped him to learn how to solve problems. He also found English very useful as it helps him work with people across the world.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- Sherif wanted to be an when he was 10.
a) doctor b) engineer c) teacher d) vet
- The underlined word "**start**" is the opposite of
a) begin b) finish c) play d) study
- Sherif found useful.
a) math b) English c) history d) geography

B) Answer the following questions.

4. When did he start helping a robot design company online?
.....

5. What subjects helped him to solve problems?
.....



The Reader

Read and write T (True) or F (False).

- The crocodile looked like a dead tree in the water.
- Subira taught Jubari to stay near animals with big teeth.
- The crocodile lives in Lake Nasser.
- The desert is a perfect place for gazelles.

B) Complete the following sentences:

- Jubari climbed the biggest home.
- Gebel Elba is the

5

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Has he on a plane or a train?
a) travel b) traveled c) travels d) traveling.
2. They are happy, they?
a) can't b) don't c) are d) aren't
3. If he was free, he visit us.
a) will b) can c) may d) would
4. This is Dina lives in Cairo.
a) which b) who c) when d) where
5. They visited a wadi they saw some animals.
a) who b) where c) which d) when
6. I you this bike already.
a) bought b) have bought c) would buy d) buy

6

Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. a bike - you - Have - ridden - before - ?
.....
2. to - used - People - mud - houses - build - .
.....
3. here - be - is - Life - going to - better - .
.....

7

Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

Guiding words:

Sunlight

(need - food - vitamin D - protect - sick - feel happy)
.....
.....
.....

Test (14)

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. It's and Salma and her family are going for a holiday.
a) winter b) spring c) summer d) autumn
2. Salma and her family are going to
a) Aswan b) Luxor c) Marsa Alam d) Alexandria
3. Salma looks out of the window.
a) bus b) car c) train d) plane
4. Salma sees a sign to Sukari
a) fine b) mine c) line d) coin

2 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

Archaeologists - Doctors - natural - volcano - world

The Great Pyramid is man-made, which means that people made it.

- 1) can learn a lot about history from buildings like this.
We can also learn a lot from 2) wonders of the
3) such as the Ngorongoro Crater. For example, we know this was
once a 4) which erupted millions of years ago.

3 Read the following text then answer the questions.

Jack is a carpenter. He has a big workshop. He gets up at 6 o'clock in the morning. He has breakfast. Then, he goes to his big workshop. He makes tables and chairs. He likes his job. Jack has two daughters and a son. His son is older than his daughters. On Friday, he doesn't go to work. He likes watching TV with his family.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- The underlined word "has" means to
 a) buy b) sell c) make d) eat
- Jack doesn't have a workshop.
 a) small b) big c) large d) huge
- A carpenter can make
 a) bread b) bikes c) tables d) vegetables

B) Answer the following questions.

- What is Jack's job?

- When does Jack get up?

4 The Reader

A Read and write T (True) or F (False).

- Jubari is a dorcass camel.
- Jubari was very strong.
- Jubari wanted to play with all birds.
- Subira is Jubari's mother.

B Complete the following sentences:

- Jubari was brave and
- Jubari was born in

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- I you this story already.
 a) tell b) tells c) have told d) telling

Final Revision

2. She will visit us tomorrow, she?
a) will b) can't c) won't d) can
3. He said he trees.
a) plant b) planted c) plants d) planting
4. He eats much he is fat.
a) so b) because c) but d) or
5. I'd have an ice cream if it hot.
a) is b) was c) will be d) be
6. you ever visited another country?
a) Has b) Have c) Are d) Do

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. can - pour - You - into - a liquid - a cup - .
.....
2. doing - are - What - tomorrow - you - ?
.....
3. the air - flew - up - The children - into - .
.....

7 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

A school trip

Guiding words:

(last - friends - arrived - Pyramids - Sphinx - museum - Tower - nice time)

.....

.....

.....

Test (15)

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Mr Taha works at the
 a) park b) museum c) school d) temple
2. Our class is learning about natural
 a) courses b) resources c) houses d) forces
3. They are talking about resources in Egypt.
 a) old b) new c) modern d) ancient
4. Ancient Egypt had of natural resources.
 a) little b) few c) a lot d) less

2 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

fresh - drinking - important - rain - salty

- Water is very 1) for our life. We need it every day for
 2) and washing. When there is no
 3), there is a drought. It's difficult to find
 4) water in a drought (جفاف).

3 Read the following text then answer the questions.

One summer evening, I was sitting by the open window reading a new story. After a time, it became too dark to read easily. So I put the book down and went up to switch on the light. I was just about to draw the curtains as well, when I heard a loud cry of help! It seemed to come from the trees at the end of the garden. I looked out, but I saw nothing. I used my torch to see my way back home. When I reached the window near the door of the house, I saw a bird sitting on the top of the window. It was a large green and red bird. It was a parrot. It was repeating "Help", but in a weak voice.

Final Revision

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- I was reading a new
a) book b) article c) report d) story
- It was a which cried for help.
a) parrot b) boy c) man d) girl
- The underlined word "It" refers to the
a) tree b) garden c) bird d) window

B) Answer the following questions.

- Why did the writer go to the garden?
.....
- Where did the writer think the loud cry come from?
.....

4 The Reader

A Read and write T (True) or F (False).

- Jubari found Wadi of the Gazelles.
- Predators aren't dangerous animals.
- For the first year of his life, Jubari followed his mother.
- The crocodile lives in Lake Nasser.

B Complete the following sentences:

- The beach was too
- The mountains were too

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- They like English, they?
a) does b) do c) don't d) didn't
- If he ran, he catch the bus.
a) will b) would c) may d) can

3. He has a camel.
a) ride b) rode c) ridden d) rides
4. They said that they the lion.
a) see b) saw c) sees d) will see
5. They met a man works in a garden.
a) which b) who c) where d) when
6. He eats a lot of fruit it's healthy.
a) but b) so c) because d) and

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. flax - used - People - make - to - linen - .
2. like - be - would - I - to - a teacher - .
3. center - far from - museum - The science - isn't - the city - .

7 Write a text of **FIFTY (50)** words about:

A picnic

Guiding words:

(picnic - family - fun - played - football - happy - enjoyed)

Test (16)

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Copper was a very important
a) medal b) metal c) pedal d) food
2. Copper was to bend.
a) difficult b) hard c) easy d) funny
3. People used it to make
a) tools b) pools c) rulers d) rolls
4. We can see a lot of the objects today in the Egyptian
a) parks b) zoos c) museums d) banks

2 Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

unhealthy - healthy - twice - tennis - What

- Omar : What's your favorite sport?
Ahmed : My favorite sport is 1)
Omar : How often do you practise tennis? a week.
Ahmed : I practise it 2) diet?
Omar : Do you have 3)
Ahmed : Yes, I do. do you always eat?
Omar : 4)
Ahmed : I eat a lot of dairy products.

3 Read the following text then answer the questions.

English is an interesting language. It's spoken all over the world. More people are learning it all over the world. Learning English is not so difficult, but unless you use it quite often, you'll forget it. A foreign language gives you the real chance to read and know how other people think and

live. This will make you know a lot about the wide world if you ever think of going to foreign countries. You'll find English more useful. Good English gives you a better chance for work.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. English is
 a) useless b) useful c) careful d) careless
2. Good English gives you a better chance for good
 a) school b) job c) sport d) house
3. The underlined pronoun "it" refers to
 a) English b) world c) chance d) Arabic

B) Answer the following questions.

4. What does a foreign language give you?

5. Where is English spoken?

4 The Reader

A Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. Wadi el Gemal is the perfect place for gazelles.
2. The beach was too stony.
3. Jubari thought he might see the Wadi of Gazelles from the top.
4. Gebel Elba is the home of the Nubian ibex.

B Complete the following sentences:

1. Donga is the name of a
2. Jubari's were going into the ground.

Final Revision

5

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. This is the place I live.
a) what b) where c) who d) which
2. If you need to increase the speed, you the pedals more quickly.
a) will push b) pushing c) pushes d) pushed
3. They their house two years ago.
a) sell b) sells c) will sell d) sold
4. He said he a car.
a) buy b) buys c) bought d) buying
5. We can't make dinner tonight, we?
a) can't b) can c) will d) won't
6. I want to be healthy I don't eat candies.
a) but b) so c) because d) and

6

Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. the - visited - Have - desert - you - ?
.....
2. sunlight - from - get - We - vitamin D - :
.....
3. food - eat - important - It's - to - healthy - :
.....

7

Write a text of **FIFTY (50)** words about:

Healthy Diet

Guiding words:

(fat - sugar - vitamins - vegetables - energy - carbohydrates -
healthy - good for)

Listening Texts

Unit (1)

1- Listen and choose the correct answer.

Instead of water, our veins and arteries carry blood around our bodies. Arteries move blood away from our heart. Veins carry blood to it. The nutrients and oxygen that we need are in our blood. But we don't use carbon dioxide like plants do.

- Listen and choose the correct answer.

Seleem is a healthy boy. He loves sports. He plays tennis, football, and basketball. He eats healthy food like fruit, vegetables, and rice. He doesn't eat much chocolate because he knows that this food isn't very healthy. In the evening, he wants to relax, so he reads a book.

Unit (2)

1- Listen and choose the correct answer.

The African continent has some of the most famous natural wonders in the world. The Ngorongoro crater in Tanzania is the largest volcanic crater in the world. It formed when a volcano erupted millions of years ago. It is about 260 square kilometres.

- Listen and choose the correct answer.

Rainbow Bridge is one of the largest natural arches in the world. It is also 200 million years old. It is 88 meters tall. It is in a very hot desert.

Unit (3)

1- Listen and choose the correct answer.

People kept bees to make honey in ancient Egypt over 4,500 years ago. Honey was an expensive but an important natural resource. Everyone liked it because you could use it for many different things. People used it to make food taste sweet. They used it as a medicine, too. If you cut yourself, you could put honey on the cut. People put bees in a house called hives.

- Listen and choose the correct answer.

People in ancient Egypt used mud to build houses and other buildings. They took it from the Nile when it was soft and made it into square bricks. These were hard and strong when they are dried.

Unit (4)

1- Listen and choose the correct answer.

I'm Amal. I want to be an astronaut because I'm interested in the stars and the planets.

It is important to study other planets because it helps us understand our own planet, and this might help us solve some of Earth's problems. When you see videos of the International Space Station, it looks fun living without gravity.

- Listen and choose the correct answer.

I'm Karim. I decided to be a pilot when I went to an airplane festival with my mom.

Listening Texts

and dad. We saw lots of different planes flying in the sky, and some of them did amazing moves, flying close to the ground, and then flying around in a circle.

Tests

محافظة القليوبية (1)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

Rainforests are characterized by warm climatic conditions throughout the year. The average temperature recorded there ranges from 72 to 93 degrees Fahrenheit. Rainforests are near the equator. A huge variety of animals can live in the rainforests.

إدارة كوم حمادة (2)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

Nabq is a very big national park in South Sinai. Along the coast, there is a mangrove forest. Mangrove forests are so important for the marine life. Mangrove trees can grow in the salt water. They have amazing roots which grow high out of the water.

إدارة أدكو (3)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

My name is Jana. When I grow up, I'd love to be an engineer like my uncle Wael. His job sounds really interesting. Engineers help make things such as skateboards and roads. Uncle Wael says that you need to understand maths to do this job. I work hard to be successful in life.

محافظة القليوبية (4)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

Nabq is a very big national park in South

Sinai. Last week Heba went on a trip there. She learnt that the mangrove trees can grow in salt water. They protect the living things and the non-living things in the marine ecosystem.

إدارة بندر كفر الدوار (5)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

Yosof is my friend. He wants to be a pilot. He says that people without gravity float all the time. He is interested in the stars and the planets. Plants help us solve some of the earth's problems.

إدارة الغردقة (6)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

Youssef is on a vacation in Dahab with his family. It's near the Red Sea. It has a nice beach. The water in Dahab is so cool. He enjoys swimming in the sea.

Test (7)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

Mangrove trees help the environment in different ways. Mangrove trees protect the non-living things and the living things in the marine ecosystem. When there are storms, their deep roots stop the sand from moving away. This ecosystem is also a safe home for many animals.

Test (8)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

In some ways, humans are similar to plants. Think about our circulatory system. Instead of water, our veins and arteries carry blood around our bodies. Arteries

move blood away from our heart. Veins carry blood to it. We don't use carbon dioxide like plants do.

Test (9)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

Mount Kilimanjaro is made of three volcanoes. Mount Kilimanjaro is the tallest mountain in Africa. Every year, about 25.000 people climb it but it is difficult. The mountain has different ecosystems. At the top there is snow and ice.

Test (10)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

The kingfisher visited her friend, the lizard, in a mangrove tree. The lizard was sad. She explained that when people came to the mangrove forest, they cut down the trees. After that, it was difficult for the lizard to find food to eat.

Test (11)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

Ancient Egyptian kept bees to make honey over 4.500 years ago. Honey was expensive but an important natural resource. Everyone liked honey because you could use it for many different things. People used honey to make food taste sweet.

Test (12)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

Mangrove trees are special because they can grow in salt water. Mangrove forests protect the marine ecosystem. The

leaves of mangrove trees take more carbon dioxide from the air than other trees. Bees make special honey from the flowers of mangrove trees.

Test (13)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

The lava and ash mix with mud flows, this makes soil fertile where good food grows. When the farmers come back to the land, they thank the volcanoes for the helping hand. Farmers are very happy at the end.

Test (14)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

It's summer and Salma and her family are going to Marsa Alam for a holiday. Salma looks out of the car window and sees a sign to the Sukari mine. She's very excited.

Test (15)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

Hello, my name's Mr Taha and I work at the museum. I know your class is learning about natural resources, so I'm here today to talk about resources in ancient Egypt. Ancient Egypt had a lot of them.

Test (16)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

Copper was a very important metal. It was easy to bend, and people used it to make tools, cooking pots, as well as jewelry. We can see a lot of these objects today in the Egyptian museums.

Model Answers

Unit (1)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

1) blood

3) Veins

2) Arteries

4) carbon dioxide

1) sports

3) chocolate

2) healthy

4) relax

2) Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

1) area

2) desert

3) living

4) fish

1) food

2) sunlight

3) protect

4) happy

3) Read the text then answer the questions.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1) marine

2) salty

3) thin

B) Answer the following questions.

4) Nabq National Park.

5) The roots are amazing the leaves are thick.

4) Choose the correct answer. (Vocabulary)

1) leaves

2) living

3) non-living

4) butterflies

5) protect

6) interact

7) patient

8) beauty

9) success

10) Luck

11) Arteries

12) sunlight

13) healthy

14) nutrients

-) Choose the correct answer. (Grammar)

1) which

2) which

3) where

4) who

5) who

6) where

7) where

8) who

9) but

10) because

11) when

12) and

13) so

14) and

5) Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1) How often does your heart beat?

2) The dugong says that the people are back.

3) Do you know my aunt who lives in Alex?

4) What lives in the mangrove forests?

6) Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

(How to keep healthy)

To keep healthy you should eat lots of fruit and vegetables. You should also exercise. You shouldn't eat unhealthy food like chocolate. You should relax.

-) Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

(Our heart)

Your heart beats over 100,000 times a day! So it's important to keep your heart healthy. When you walk,

run, swim, or cycle, you make your heart work harder. If you exercise regularly, your heart works better and you can get the minerals, nutrients, and oxygen you need more easily.

Unit (2)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

1) African

2) Tanzania

3) crater

4) 260

-) Listen and choose the correct answer.

1) Bridge

2) 200

3) tall

4) hot

2) Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

1) reading

2) Tanzania

3) big

4) buffaloes

-) Read and complete the text with words from the box.

1) River

2) canyon

3) eroded

4) noise

3) Read the text then answer the questions.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1) Australia

2) month

3) limestone

B) Answer the following questions.

4) They're 25,000 to 30,000 years old.

5) Between three and five meters high.

4) Choose the correct answer. (Vocabulary)

1) volcanic

2) wetlands

3) eleven

4) hot

5) shape

6) canyon

7) erode

8) wetland

9) erupt

10) Soil

11) Lava

12) mud flow

13) ribbon

14) basket

-) Choose the correct answer. (Grammar)

1) traveled

2) met

3) haven't played

4) Has

5) seen

6) ever

7) visited

8) eaten

9) been

10) saw

11) won

12) I have

13) taken

14) never been

5) Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1) The African continent is an amazing place.

2) Have you traveled on a ship?

3) I have already told you this story.

4) What is special about the Island of Java?

6) Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

(The Sahara Desert)

The Sahara Desert is one of the natural wonders of Africa. It is the largest hot desert in the world. It covers eleven countries. Some of the sand dunes can be about 180 meters high.

-) Write a text of **FIFTY (50)** words about:

(Man-made wonders of Africa)

The natural world in Africa is beautiful, but people in this continent have made many incredible things, too. Some of the most important man-made wonders are in Egypt: the Pyramids of Giza, the Sphinx, the temples of Abu Simbel, and the Valley of the Kings. People come from all over the world to visit these places and learn about Egypt's history. But there's a lot more to see in Africa.

Unit (3)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

- 1) bees 2) sweet 3) medicine 4) hives

-) Listen and choose the correct answer.

- 1) mud 2) Nile
3) square 4) hard

2) Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

- 1) flax 2) clothes
3) important 4) cotton

-) Read and complete the text with words from the box.

- 1) countries 2) fresh 3) medicine 4) Delta

3) Read the text then answer the questions.

A) Choose the correct answer.

- 1) Rayan 2) bottom 3) sixty-seven

B) Answer the following questions.

- 4) An oasis in the desert.
5) Two lakes.

4) Choose the correct answer. (Vocabulary)

- 1) renewable 2) boil 3) freeze
4) shovel 5) flax 6) Copper 7) honey
8) papyrus 9) mud 10) blind 11) odor
12) sticky 13) solid 14) do

-) Choose the correct answer. (Grammar)

- 1) would 2) met 3) will 4) visited
5) flew 6) was 7) will 8) sink
9) liked 10) had 11) could 12) would
13) was 14) went

5) Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

- 1) Which is Wael's favorite bird?
2) People used honey as a medicine.
3) People used linen to make clothes.
4) The old cheese has a bad odor.

6) Write a text of **FIFTY (50)** words about:

(Mud)

People in ancient Egypt used mud. They used it for building houses and other buildings. They took it from the Nile when it was soft and made it into square bricks. These bricks were hard and strong when they dried. It was very important.

-) Write a text of **FIFTY (50)** words about:

(Wadi El Rayan Waterfalls)

Last week, our class went on a trip to the waterfalls at Wadi El Rayan. It was beautiful! There are two lakes there: One at the top of the waterfalls and one at the bottom. The waterfalls are 67 meters high, so the sound of water falling is very loud. We couldn't hear our teacher talking very well! We learned that the water comes from an oasis in the desert.

Unit (4)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

- 1) planets 2) important
3) problems 4) fun

-) Listen and choose the correct answer.

- 1) pilot 2) dad
3) planes 4) circle

2) Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

- 1) fall 2) float
3) sun 4) important

-) Read and complete the text with words from the box.

- 1) telling 2) scientist 3) clocks 4) years

3) Read the text then answer the questions.

A) Choose the correct answer.

- 1) robot 2) English 3) Japanese

B) Answer the following questions.

- 4) In the day.
5) He wanted to be an engineer.

4) Choose the correct answer. (Vocabulary)

- 1) pilot 2) astronaut 3) engineer
4) brakes 5) push 6) inventor
7) pull 8) wings 9) See you soon
10) Hi 11) in 12) astronaut
13) Friction 14) push

-) Choose the correct answer. (Grammar)

- 1) didn't 2) can 3) will 4) isn't
5) isn't 6) does 7) won't 8) can
9) will 10) did 11) is 12) didn't
13) won't 14) can't

Model Answers

5) Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

- 1) I had some time to talk to my friends.
- 2) Abbas Ibn Firnas was a great inventor.
- 3) The children flew up into the air.
- 4) Is there gravity in space?

6) Write an email of FIFTY (50) words.

To: Safia
From: Anas
Subject: Future job

Dear Safia,
I'm very happy to write this email to you. I'd like to tell you about my future job. I want to be a teacher. It is an interesting job. When I will be a teacher, I will work with children. I will work hard at school to help my pupils understand easily.

7) Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

(Gravity)

Gravity is what makes things fall to the ground. It is the force that makes leaves fall to the ground in fall and not float above the tree. When this boy jumps on the bed, gravity brings him down and stops him floating up into the air. It is also the force that keeps the planets moving around the sun.

Exams

محافظة القليوبية (1)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

- 1) warm
- 2) recorded
- 3) near
- 4) variety

2) Read and complete the text with words from the box.

- 1) Nile
- 2) made
- 3) sand
- 4) waterfalls

3) Read the text then answer the questions.

A) Choose the correct answer.

- 1) can
- 2) countless
- 3) oxygen

B) Answer the following questions.

- 4) To serve a common purpose - growth, reproduction and survival.
- 5) Between the blood and lungs.

4) The Reader.

A) Read and write T (True) or F (False).

- 1) F
- 2) F
- 3) T
- 4) T

B) Complete the following sentences.

- 1) plants
- 2) turtles

5) Choose the correct answer.

- 1) must
- 2) haven't
- 3) go
- 4) would
- 5) who
- 6) Has

6) Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

- 1) Global warming is dangerous for the Earth.
- 2) Mount Kilimanjaro in Africa is the tallest mountain.
- 3) There is so much beauty in the Amazon rainforest.

7) Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

(Natural resources)

There are two kind of resources. They are renewable and non-renewable. Renewable energy like sun and wind. They are clean and never run out. Solar energy is renewable energy. Non-renewable energy isn't clean. When we burn fossil fuels, we can't use them again.

إدارة كوم حمادة (2)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

- 1) Sinai
- 2) forest
- 3) salt
- 4) roots

2) Read and complete the text with words from the box.

- 1) important
- 2) cycle
- 3) regularly
- 4) more

3) Read the text then answer the questions.

A) Choose the correct answer.

- 1) Amazon Rainforest
- 2) positive
- 3) carbon

B) Answer the following questions.

- 4) The Amazon.
- 5) From the majestic Amazon River.

4) The Reader.

A) Read and write T (True) or F (False).

- 1) T
- 2) F
- 3) T
- 4) F

B) Complete the following sentences.

- 1) mother
- 2) Gemal

5) Choose the correct answer.

- 1) where
- 2) because
- 3) for
- 4) yet
- 5) had
- 6) didn't

6) Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

- 1) We met a man who works in a garden.
- 2) Have you ever travelled on a ship?
- 3) Kamal's parents are storm-chasers.

7) Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

(A job you would like to do in the future)

I'd like to be a doctor when I grow up. When I'm a doctor, I can help and examine patients. I can give them medicine to feel better. I'll work in a hospital. I'll travel abroad to complete my study. I'll help the charity which takes care of the sick.

(3) إدارة إيدكو

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

- 1) engineer 2) maths
3) interesting 4) roads

2) Read and complete the text with words from the box.

- 1) Honey 2) sweet 3) medicine 4) hives

3) Read the text then answer the questions.

A) Choose the correct answer.

- 1) two 2) chairs 3) Friday

B) Answer the following questions.

- 4) A carpenter. 5) At 6 o'clock.

4) The Reader.

A) Read and write T (True) or F (False).

- 1) T 2) F 3) F 4) T

B) Complete the following sentences.

- 1) mother 2) Salty

5) Choose the correct answer.

- 1) who 2) and 3) eaten
4) see 5) traveled 6) can't

6) Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

- 1) She has already fed the hens.
2) Where did you go yesterday, Hany?
3) We must wait for the rain?

7) Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

(A school trip)

Last week, I went to the museum with my friends. We went there by the school bus. We took photos of the objects there. We had nice time. We came back in the evening. We were very happy.

(4) محافظة القليوبية

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

- 1) park 2) salt water
3) protect 4) trip

2) Read and complete the text with words from the box.

- 1) healthy 2) exercise
3) wonders 4) road

3) Read the text then answer the questions.

A) Choose the correct answer.

- 1) bees 2) sweet 3) necessary

B) Answer the following questions.

- 4) Because it could be used for many things.
5) You can put honey on cuts.

4) The Reader.

A) Read and write T (True) or F (False).

- 1) F 2) T 3) T 4) T

B) Complete the following sentences.

- 1) mother 2) soft

5) Choose the correct answer.

- 1) where 2) so 3) ever
4) to have 5) Although 6) tall

6) Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

- 1) He is visiting his old friend.
2) It's important to have a healthy diet.
3) If you study hard, you'll succeed.

7) Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

(Cotton)

Cotton is a very important crop. Farmers grow it in the Nile Delta. People make clothes from it. The land in Egypt is good for growing cotton.

(5) إدارة بندر كفر الدوار

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

- 1) pilot 2) gravity
3) stars 4) plants

2) Read and complete the text with words from the box.

- 1) change 2) into
3) solid 4) liquid

3) Read the text then answer the questions.

A) Choose the correct answer.

- 1) should 2) safe 3) dirty

B) Answer the following questions.

- 4) To walk, relax and breathe fresh air.
5) Flowers, trees and grass.

4) The Reader.

A) Read and write T (True) or F (False).

- 1) T 2) F 3) F 4) T

B) Complete the following sentences.

- 1) salty 2) hot

5) Choose the correct answer.

- 1) and 2) where 3) beats
4) is 5) because 6) could

6) Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

- 1) A chair is made of wood.
2) Emad visited his uncle.
3) Why is the sun important?

Model Answers

7) Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:
(My favorite job)

I'd like to be an engineer. So I need to study hard. When I become an engineer, I will wear a helmet to protect my head. I'll help to build bridges and roads.

(6) إدارة الغردقة

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

- 1) family 2) Red Sea
3) cool 4) swimming

2) Read and complete the text with words from the box.

- 1) go 2) Luxor
3) saw 4) interesting

3) Read the text then answer the questions.

A) Choose the correct answer.

- 1) cousin 2) art 3) eleven

B) Answer the following questions.

- 4) He likes painting. 5) Adel and Ali.

4) The Reader.

A) Read and write T (True) or F (False).

- 1) F 2) T 3) F 4) T

B) Complete the following sentences.

- 1) fast 2) salty

5) Choose the correct answer.

- 1) made 2) who 3) beautiful
4) visit 5) can't 6) but

6) Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

- 1) I didn't meet my friend yesterday.
2) Mangrove trees grow in salt water.
3) Have you ever traveled to Cairo?

7) Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

(How to keep healthy)

Health is very important. So I eat lots of fruit and vegetables. They are good for our health. I should do exercise every week. I should drink a lot of water too.

Exam (7)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

- 1) environment 2) marine
3) roots 4) home

2) Read and complete the text with words from the box.

- 1) astronaut 2) planets 3) problems 4) float

3) Read the text then answer the questions.

A) Choose the correct answer.

- 1) playing video games 2) schools 3) slow

B) Answer the following questions.

- 1) Football. 2) His fans.

4) The Reader.

A) Read and write T (True) or F (False).

- 1) T 2) F 3) T 4) F

B) Complete the following sentences.

- 1) animals 2) daffodil

5) Choose the correct answer.

- 1) can 2) was 3) can't
4) who 5) liked 6) wouldn't

6) Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

- 1) The parts of the forest interact with the ecosystem.
2) How often does your heart beat?
3) Can we catch a rabbit to eat?

7) Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

(Rain)

Rain is very important for living things. It's important for plants too. When rain falls, we can grow plants. We need rain as humans for drinking and washing. Animals need water, too. All living things need water.

Exam (8)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

- 1) plants 2) arteries
3) veins 4) carbon dioxide

2) Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

- 1) mountains 2) found 3) home 4) dinosaur

3) Read the text then answer the questions.

A) Choose the correct answer.

- 1) honey 2) old 3) bees

B) Answer the following questions.

- 4) The ancient Egyptians.
5) For making baskets and sandals.

4) The Reader.

A) Read and write T (True) or F (False).

- 1) T 2) F 3) T 4) F

B) Complete the following sentences.

- 1) brave 2) steep

5) Choose the correct answer.

- 1) who 2) been 3) met
4) can 5) which 6) went

6) Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

- 1) The Ngorongoro Crater is 260 square kilometers.
2) What lives in mangrove forests?
3) Has Mr Kamal traveled to the USA?

7) Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

(An ecosystem)

An ecosystem is all the animals and plants in an area. It can be as small as a pond or as big as a forest. In an ecosystem, living things such as plants and animals interact with non-living things. The different species in an ecosystem makes a community and they all need each other to survive.

Exam (9)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

- 1) three 2) Africa
3) difficult 4) ice

2) Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

- 1) been 2) Have
3) haven't 4) Which

3) Read the text then answer the questions.

A) Choose the correct answer.

- 1) Last year 2) Neva 3) trip

B) Answer the following questions.

- 4) It is in St Petersburg in Russia.
5) Because he had to walk a lot.

4) The Reader.

A) Read and write T (True) or F (False).

- 1) F 2) T 3) F 4) T

B) Complete the following sentences.

- 1) salty 2) mangrove

5) Choose the correct answer.

- 1) ever 2) but 3) have
4) where 5) won't 6) will call

6) Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

- 1) What can we do with natural resources?
2) They don't look like normal shoes.
3) There isn't any coffee in the cupboard.

7) Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

(Natural Wonders)

The Sahara Desert is the largest hot desert in the world. It covers eleven countries. Mount Kilimanjaro is made of three volcanoes. It is the tallest mountain in Africa. People like to climb it.

Exam (10)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

- 1) friend 2) sad
3) trees 4) food

2) Read and complete the text with words from the box.

- 1) bees 2) Honey 3) because 4) sweet

3) Read the text then answer the questions.

A) Choose the correct answer.

- 1) astronaut 2) gravity 3) sink

B) Answer the following questions.

- 4) To understand our own planet and they help us solve some of Earth's problems.
5) Because they live there without gravity.

4) The Reader.

A) Read and write T (True) or F (False).

- 1) F 2) T 3) T 4) T

B) Complete the following sentences.

- 1) hot days 2) daffodil

5) Choose the correct answer.

- 1) never 2) will 3) and
4) went 5) went 6) who

6) Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

- 1) What would happen if there was no gravity?
2) I like visiting the park.
3) How will you help the environment?

7) Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

(What do you want to be?)

I want to be an astronaut. It is important to study other planets. I'm interested in stars. I like to work in a space station. If we live without gravity, we will float all the time.

Exam (11)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

- 1) bees 2) expensive
3) natural 4) sweet

2) Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

- 1) been 2) Why
3) train 4) family

3) Read the text then answer the questions.

A) Choose the correct answer.

- 1) city 2) restaurant 3) much

B) Answer the following questions.

- 4) Where the chances of work are found.
5) Many people

4) The Reader.

A) Read and write T (True) or F (False).

- 1) F 2) F 3) T 4) T

B) Complete the following sentences.

- 1) water 2) steep

5) Choose the correct answer.

- 1) and 2) traveled 3) studies
4) liked 5) doesn't 6) decided

Model Answers

6) Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

- 1) Have you traveled on a ship?
- 2) Cairo is the largest city in Egypt.
- 3) Storm chasers study extreme weather.
- 7) Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

(Resources in ancient Egypt)

The ancient Egyptians were successful because they had good natural resources. They used flax to make linen for clothes. They used papyrus to make paper. They used copper for making pots.

Exam (12)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

- 1) salt
- 2) protect
- 3) carbon dioxide
- 4) flowers

2) Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

- 1) went
- 2) How
- 3) friends
- 4) What

3) Read the text then answer the questions.

A) Choose the correct answer.

- 1) lovely
- 2) fine
- 3) season

B) Answer the following questions.

- 4) He went to Alexandria.
- 5) To hire a boat.

4) The Reader.

A) Read and write T (True) or F (False).

- 1) T
- 2) F
- 3) T
- 4) T

B) Complete the following sentences.

- 1) plants
- 2) acacia

5) Choose the correct answer.

- 1) because
- 2) had
- 3) will
- 4) yet
- 5) isn't
- 6) wasn't

6) Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

- 1) We met a man who works in a garden.
- 2) What do you think is a natural resource?
- 3) People came and cut down some trees.

7) Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

(The mangrove trees)

The mangrove trees are very important. They protect the marine ecosystem. The leaves of the mangrove trees are thick. Bees are buzzing there. They live in hives to make honey.

Exam (13)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

- 1) ash
- 2) fertile
- 3) farmers
- 4) happy

2) Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

- 1) fine
- 2) What
- 3) Do
- 4) stories

3) Read the text then answer the questions.

A) Choose the correct answer.

- 1) engineer
- 2) finish
- 3) English

B) Answer the following questions.

- 4) When he was 13.
- 5) Science and math.

4) The Reader.

A) Read and write T (True) or F (False).

- 1) T
- 2) F
- 3) T
- 4) T

B) Complete the following sentences.

- 1) mountain
- 2) ibex

5) Choose the correct answer.

- 1) traveled
- 2) aren't
- 3) would
- 4) who
- 5) where
- 6) have bought

6) Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

- 1) Have you ridden a bike before?
- 2) People used mud to build houses.
- 3) Life is going to be better here.

7) Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

(Sunlight)

Humans need sunlight. We can't make our own foods without sunlight. We get vitamin D from sunlight. This can help protect us from getting sick. Sunlight also makes a lot of people feel happy.

Exam (14)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

- 1) summer
- 2) Marsa Alam
- 3) car
- 4) mine

2) Read and complete the text with words from the box.

- 1) Archaeologists
- 2) natural
- 3) world
- 4) volcano

3) Read the text then answer the questions.

A) Choose the correct answer.

- 1) eat
- 2) small
- 3) tables

B) Answer the following questions.

- 4) He is a carpenter.
- 5) He gets up at six o'clock.

7) Write a text of **FIFTY (50)** words about:

(A picnic)

Yesterday I went on a picnic. I went with my family. It was fun. I played football. I was very happy. I had a nice time there. I enjoyed the picnic very much.

Exam (16)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

- | | |
|----------|------------|
| 1) metal | 2) easy |
| 3) tools | 4) museums |

2) Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

- | | |
|------------|----------|
| 1) tennis | 2) twice |
| 3) healthy | 4) What |

3) Read the text then answer the questions.

A) Choose the correct answer.

- | | | |
|-----------|--------|------------|
| 1) useful | 2) job | 3) English |
|-----------|--------|------------|

B) Answer the following questions.

- 4) It gives you the real chance to read and know how other people think and live.
- 5) All over the world.

4) The Reader.

A) Read and write T (True) or F (False).

- | | | | |
|------|------|------|------|
| 1) T | 2) F | 3) T | 4) T |
|------|------|------|------|

B) Complete the following sentences.

- | | |
|-----------|-----------|
| 1) dugong | 2) hooves |
|-----------|-----------|

5) Choose the correct answer.

- | | | |
|-----------|--------------|---------|
| 1) where | 2) will push | 3) sold |
| 4) bought | 5) can | 6) so |

6) Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

- 1) Have you visited the desert?
- 2) We get vitamin D from sunlight.
- 3) It's important to eat healthy food.

7) Write a text of **FIFTY (50)** words about:

(Healthy Diet)

A healthy diet is important for everyone. You shouldn't have a lot of sugar. You should eat fruits and vegetables to get vitamins. Carbohydrates give us energy. Eating the right food is good for us.